从“琳”开始

SAT高分突破系列

SAT语法高分23讲

李琳 ◎ 编著

要点精讲

全面掌握考点分布的语法宝典

真题解析

及时了解考试动向的高分指南

抓结构

高处着眼梳理SAT语法真脉络

对考点

深层入手破解SAT语法重难点

机械工业出版社
CHINA MACHINE PRESS

SAT 高分突破系列

从“琳”开始

——SAT 语法高分 23 讲

李　琳　编著

SAT Grammar

机 械 工 业 出 版 社

本书根据SAT中语法部分的出题思路，将全书分为三个部分——结构篇、考点篇、精练篇。

结构篇着重为考生梳理SAT语法的读题方法。在读题时，切忌不抓句子结构，只靠理解句意来读题。SAT语法考试要求考生具备迅速且正确抓取句子主干结构的能力。因此，在结构篇为考生讲解了英语语法中最重要的句法规则和句子的框架结构。在此基础上，讲解了分析句子的方法。

在掌握了分析句子结构的方法之后，进入到SAT语法的考点篇。SAT语法考试就像高考语文的语法改错一样，考的是逻辑性很强的规范性语法。因此我们反复强调，做SAT语法题时不能够凭感觉做题。每一个可选的选项都要符合语法规则，也就是考点严格对应。在考点篇里，对SAT语法常考的13个考点进行了详细的讲解。

在考生全面掌握了“抓结构+对考点”的做题方法后，本书第三部分为大家提供了四套2012年的SAT语法真题并附有每道题目的讲解。考生可以通过这四套真题进行全面的演练，并参考真题讲解，修正做题思路。

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

从“琳”开始：SAT语法高分23讲/李琳编著. —北京：机械工业出版社，2013.9

（SAT高分突破系列）

ISBN 978-7-111-44185-4

Ⅰ.①从… Ⅱ.①李… Ⅲ.①英语－语法－高等学校－入学考试－美国－自学参考资料 Ⅳ.①H314

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字（2013）第228292号

机械工业出版社（北京市百万庄大街22号 邮政编码100037）

策划编辑：裴 泱 责任编辑：裴 泱 杨 洋

版式设计：霍永明 责任校对：赵 蕊

封面设计：张 静 责任印制：

印刷厂印刷：

2014年1月第1版第1次印刷

184mm×260mm·12.25印张·261千字

标准书号：ISBN 978-7-111-44185-4

定价： 元

凡购本书，如有缺页、倒页、脱页，由本社发行部调换

电话服务	网络服务
社服务中心：（010）88361066	教材网：http://www.cmpedu.com
销售一部：（010）68326294	机工官网：http://www.cmpbook.com
销售二部：（010）88379649	机工官博：http://weibo.com/cmp1952
读者购书热线：（010）88379203	**封面无防伪标均为盗版**

前　言

SAT 语法是 SAT 考试的难点和重点，同时也是阅读和写作的基础。很多中国考生在学习 SAT 语法时往往会走入一些误区。一是拿起官方指南的大蓝本开始啃题，觉得做完了所有的题目，SAT 就能取得高分。我们不能说题海战术完全无效，但是仅仅痴迷于大量做题，不仅会浪费许多时间和精力，而且实践证明其对于能力的培养和分数的提高鲜有裨益。二是很多考生对 SAT 语法的应对方式一般是读题目，看意思，凭感觉作出选择，难以保证正确率。

笔者一直倡导，掌握好的方法才不会让汗水白流。我们在下定决心努力之前，首先需要的不是埋头苦干，而是静心凝神地仔细思考其中的各个环节，思考清楚，再做努力。由此观之，我们有多少准备 SAT 的中国考生认真思考过 SAT 到底是在考什么？它想考查受试者的什么能力？如果连这一步都没有想明白，就如同缘木求鱼，也就不免存在徘徊踟蹰于成功的大门外而不得入的困惑。

SAT 考试一直备受美国名校的认可，可以说一份好的 SAT 成绩是中国中学生迈向美国名校的敲门砖。很多人对 SAT 的解读是，SAT 考智力。其实，SAT 考的远远不是智力这么抽象，说得更明白一点，SAT 考的是学生的逻辑能力和分析能力，而这种能力恰恰是美国名校所看重的。从议论文写作，到篇章阅读，再到语法考试，无一不体现对这种能力的考查。

从 SAT 考试对考生能力的要求，我们可以发现，SAT 考的无非是结构问题：语法部分，考查考生基本的分析句子结构的能力；阅读部分，考查考生分析篇章结构的能力。笔者总结 SAT 语法正确的做题思路是“抓结构 + 对考点”。两手抓，两手都要硬。一方面，抓得住、抓得对句子基本结构，是做题的基础。如果连一句话的结构都分不清楚，只知道靠翻译句子的方式来读题，是远远不行的。由于语法题目常常采用设置干扰选项的出题方法，会使那些只会细细读题，不抓结构的考生一不小心就掉入陷阱。而如果考生善于抓结构，很多题目甚至不需要完整理解句意，就能做对题目。因此，笔者认为准确把握结构便是把握了 SAT 语法的本质规律。另一方面，在正确抓住结构的基础上，需要考生了解语法考点。这些考点就是英语语法中需要遵循的规则。然而，SAT 的语法规则与平时说话时使用的规则也有所区别，SAT 语法考的是严谨的规范性语法。因此，不代表我们平时怎么说，SAT 语法中就能怎么用。所以，不可以想当然地仅凭所谓的英语语感来判定选项。

本书根据笔者多年的 SAT 教学心得，尝试遵循“抓结构 + 对考点”的步骤来破解 SAT 语法这个重点和难点。本书的主要内容也将根据这两个步骤展开：

在第一部分结构篇中，将抓结构时需要使用的基本句法规则为大家进行深入梳理，将句法结构中琐碎的小点串成线，这是 SAT 语法解题的基础。可以说，基础篇内容掌握得好

坏会直接影响到强化篇对考点的运用和掌握。

在第二部分考点篇中，将 SAT 语法历年题目中常考的 13 个考点进行了全面的梳理，同时对会使用到的技巧进行了细致的讲解，力争让考生在考场上不会遇到没有见过的考点和考法。在考点篇里，每一个小点都有相应的例题例证，考生可以先做题目，后看讲解，根据讲解梳理自己的做题思路。

为了不让考生有挖坑做题的感觉，在考点篇里没有为大家提供相应考点的单项练习。在第三部分精练篇为考生提供了四套 2012 年的真题，让考生进行整体训练，一边做题一边体会 SAT 语法考试的规律，在套题中把握 SAT 语法的考点和思路。同时，在每套题后都有对题目的详细讲解，帮助考生对自己的做题思路进行修正。

“问渠哪得清如许，为有源头活水来”。本书不求花哨，只期盼能用朴实的语言和系统的讲述，帮助考生厘清 SAT 语法的本源，把握 SAT 语法的规律，让勤奋的考生在学习中能够按图索骥，有的放矢。本书所讲授的内容在实际教学中取得了很好的效果，希望读者都能从本书中得到一些启发，也祝愿所有的考生都能早日实现自己的常青藤梦想！

笔者　于北京

目　录

前言

一、结构篇 …… 1

第 1 讲　最重要的一句话 …… 1
第 2 讲　简单句句型 …… 4
第 3 讲　句子成分的三大层级 …… 8
第 4 讲　词 …… 13
第 5 讲　从句 …… 19
第 6 讲　非谓语动词 …… 33
第 7 讲　黄金语法四原则 …… 36
第 8 讲　句子结构分析四步骤 …… 40
第 9 讲　英语中常见的语法现象 …… 43

二、考点篇 …… 49

第 10 讲　自杀词 …… 49
第 11 讲　代词 …… 51
第 12 讲　动词 …… 62
第 13 讲　平行结构 …… 82
第 14 讲　逻辑主语 …… 90
第 15 讲　形容词和副词 …… 98
第 16 讲　连接词 …… 106
第 17 讲　名词单复数 …… 111
第 18 讲　固定搭配 …… 112
第 19 讲　拼写错误 …… 114
第 20 讲　语义重复啰唆 …… 116
第 21 讲　排序题 …… 117
第 22 讲　简洁性原则 …… 119
第 23 讲　改进文章 …… 121

三、精练篇 …… 128

2012 年 01 月语法真题解析 …… 129
2012 年 05 月语法真题解析 …… 143
2012 年 05 月香港语法真题解析 …… 156
2012 年 10 月语法真题解析 …… 171

参考文献 …… 187

一、结构篇

SAT 语法考试的做题思路是“抓结构 + 对考点”。“抓结构”强调的是 SAT 的读题方法。考生在读题时，切忌线性的没有结构感的读题。为了能将句子结构把握清晰，在结构篇将着重为大家勾勒句法结构的框架。本篇的内容一改常见语法书中由点到面的编排方式，防止读者只见树木不见森林，而以梳理核心句法规则为起点，以简单句型结构为推进，以每个相应成分上能够出现的各种结构为升华，层层递进地勾勒出英语句子的整体框架。在结构清晰的基础上，再帮助考生梳理分析句子结构的基本思路。最后，为考生讲解了英语中一些特有的语法现象。

第 1 讲　最重要的一句话

英语是重结构的语言，而句法结构中最核心的原则就是“一句话里有且只有一个谓语动词”。这一讲将对这个原则，以及由这个原则衍生出来的三大推论进行讲解。这些原则和推论会成为我们进行句子分析最关键的理论来源。

本讲内容安排如下：

1.1　推论一：句中的老大是动词，有动词就是句子，没有动词就不是句子

1.2　推论二：句子与动词一一对应，有 n 个动词就有 n 句话，需要 $n-1$ 个连接词

1.3　推论三：谓语 = 动词

英语是一种非常讲究语法的语言，语法规则需要通过一定的形态变化来表现。相比英语，汉语不用形态变化，而用上下文关系等来表达语法关系。由此可见，英语重形合，汉

语重意合。在英语学习过程中，需要时刻明确两种语言的区别。大多数中国学生对这种区别头疼不已，认为英语语法枯燥难学，更重要的是，很多时候，即使死记硬背了许多语法规则，在使用时，仍然摸不着头脑。其实，如果用死记硬背的方法学习英语语法，往往是事倍功半，力气没少花，东西还是没学透。我们要清楚，只要是规则，就有其内在规律，而内在的规律就是我们掌握语言的利器，就如阿基米德的那个可以用于翘起整个地球的支点。所以学习英语语法最重要的是知道重点语法现象的核心本质。

英语结构最核心的句法规则——一句话里有且只有一个谓语动词。我们可以由此推出三个重要推论：

1.1 推论一：句中的老大是动词，有动词就是句子，没有动词就不是句子

我们看到，这句话中反复定义的是句子和动词的关系，因此，在英语中句子最核心的东西是谓语动词，而不是大家经常脱口而出的主语。有没有动词是定义是不是句子的标准。举一个最简单的例子：

例 1-1　Stop!

例 1-1 是一个祈使句。虽说这个句子只有一个词，但是因为这个词是一个动词，根据推论一可以得知，这是一个句子。再比如：

例 1-2　Don't touch.

例 1-2 也是祈使句。我们看到，在这个结构里，do 是助动词，touch 是动词，因此，这个结构也是句子。

根据上面的两个例子，我们可以进一步了解到，判定一个结构是不是句子，绝不是由结构的长短来判定，而是由该结构中是否有动词来判定。有了动词，再短都是句子，比如例 1-1；没有动词，再长都只是一个结构，而不能称为句子。比如：

例 1-3　Remote from major sources of pollution and the complex geological and ecological systems. . .

例 1-3 是从长难句中截取出来的一部分，我们发现，这个结构比例 1-1 和例 1-2 都长，但是，这只是一个形容词短语，不能称为句子，原因是在这个长长的结构中，我们没有看到动词，所以不能称为句子。

试着分析这句话：

Remote from major sources of pollution and the complex geological and ecological systems that prevail elsewhere, Antarctica makes possible scientific measurements that are often sharper and easier to interpret than those made in other parts of the world.

本句中，形容词短语 remote from. . . elsewhere 做原因状语，其中 systems 后接一个由 that 引导的定语从句，形容词短语的逻辑主语就是主句的主语 Antarctica。而主句本是一个主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语的结构，由于宾语 scientific measurements 后接一个 that 引导的长串定语从句，为了避免头重脚轻及产生歧义，所以有一个分裂结构，即把宾补部分的短结构 possible 放在前面，宾语及后面的一大串长结构放在后面，形成主语 + 谓语 + 宾语补足语 + 宾语的结构。

译文：南极洲远离主要的污染源，不受在别处盛行的复杂的地理及生态系统的影响。这使得在那里进行的科学测量总能取得比在世界其他地区更为精确，更易于分析解释的结构。

1.2　推论二：句子与动词一一对应，有 *n* 个动词就有 *n* 句话，需要 *n* – 1 个连接词

对句子的定义是看其中有没有动词，如果有了动词就代表有一个句子。如果需要把 *n* 个有动词的句子都放在一个句点里，就应该要 *n* – 1 个连接词。这是我们在分析句子结构，尤其是对 SAT 长难句型进行初判时需要常常使用的原则。根据这个原则，我们来看例句：

例 1-4. All paper is made from trees, and each book you write will cut down some trees which take years to grow into, so if the value of your writing doesn't surpass that of the trees, then stop writing.

判定句子结构是否正确，必须要弄清动词和连接词的个数关系，一般而言，有 *n* 个动词就有 *n* 个句子，就需要 *n* – 1 个连接词。因此，拿到句子，先要分析句中的动词。例 1-4 中有 6 个动词，分别是 is，write，will cut，take，doesn't surpass，stop。有 5 个连接词，分别是 and，定语从句省略的 that，定语从句的关系代词 which，so，if。根据推论二可知，句中有 6 个动词，6 句话，需要 5 个连接词。因此可以得出，这句话的句子结构正确。

需要注意的是，在分析时，很容易把 to grow into 中的 grow 分析成动词，这是错误的。因为，to do 结构在英语中是一个统一整体，是非谓语，不能把 grow 拆分出来当做谓语动词。另外，then 是一个副词，不要当做连接词。so if 是一个双连词表达，只要符合英语的说话习惯，两个连接词是可以放在一起使用的，并且两个连接词用于连接三句话。

再看一个例句：

例 1-5　In addition to surveying 100,000 undergraduate business students, including Wharton School, *Business Week* polled nearly 2,000 corporate recruiters for companies that hire thousands of business majors each year, asking them to tell which business programs turned out the best graduates and which business schools have the most innovative curriculums and most effective career services.

这是英语中的一个标准长句，我们仍然按照推论二的原则来进行结构分析。句中的动词共 4 个，分别是 polled，hire，turned，have。共有 3 个连接词，分别是定语从句的关系代词 hire，宾语从句的引导词 which，和宾语从句的引导词 which。4 个动词 4 句话，需要 3 个连接词。所以这个句子结构正确。

1.3　推论三：谓语 = 动词

谓语和动词可以画等号，意思是，谓语和动词是绝对等同的关系。在英语中，只要是

做谓语成分的一定是动词词性，只要是动词一定在句中做谓语。它们是同一东西在不同环境下的不同表述。举一个非常简单的例子，著名功夫明星李小龙，英文名叫 Bruce Lee。不管是“李小龙”还是“Bruce Lee”说的都是他一个人，只不过因为所处场景的不同对他有不同的称呼。谓语和动词就是这样的关系，同一个东西，从成分的角度叫谓语，从词性的角度叫动词。

思考题

英语中是否有谓语从句呢？

何为从句？拿宾语从句为例，宾语从句就是在宾语的位置上放了一句话。换句话说，就是用一个句子做了宾语成分。同理，谓语从句是指，用一个句子做了谓语成分。我们通过推论三，谓语=动词，可以得知，谓语只能由动词充当，是绝对对应关系，因此，谓语部分不可能有从句出现。因此也就没有谓语从句一说了。

是否有不做谓语的动词呢？

提到不做谓语的动词，很多学生会想到非谓语动词。因为从命名上看，动词貌似可以分为两类，谓语动词和非谓语动词。其实，这是大家对非谓语动词的误读。根据推论二，谓语=动词，可知谓语和动词是绝对等同的。因此是谓语一定是动词，反之亦然。所以所谓的非谓语动词并不是有些学生理解的“非谓语的动词”——不充当谓语的动词，是指不当谓语的动词。其实，这个命名的意思是，非谓语，非动词，即它既不是谓语，也不是动词。因此，英语中不存在不做谓语的动词。

第 2 讲　简单句句型

英语的句子长短不同，简繁有别。从表面上看，句子结构似乎千变万化，难以把握。但从本质上看，英语的句子有其内在的规律。这个内在的基本规律就是，不管英语的句子有多么复杂，都是由英语中的五大简单句句型构成的。在这一讲中，对五大简单句句型进行了统一的梳理，并对五大简单句句型形成的深层次原因进行了讨论。旨在让考生能够从语言的实质把握语法结构的核心内容。

英语中任何句子，不管有多长，不管看上去有多难，其实都是由最基本的简单句构成的。简单句是长难句的骨骼。因此，想要庖丁解牛般的破解长难句，就要对简单句的基本结构和脉络了如指掌。

在英语结构中，一共有五种简单句句型，它们分别是：

主语——谓语

主语——谓语——宾语

主语——谓语——宾语——宾语补足语

主语——谓语——间接宾语——直接宾语

主语——系词——表语

了解英语中简单句句型是进行句型分析的第一步。在英文中，不管句子有多么复杂都是由这些简单句中的一个或者几个加入各种修饰成分组成的。而分析句型，掌握句子主要意思的重点也是学会从看似很长、很复杂的句子中找出这些构成句子的主干成分。因此，学习简单句是学会英语句法结构的第一步。

在详细讲这五种简单句句型之前，不知道大家有没有思考过这样一个问题，英语中为什么有五种简单句句型呢？而不是四种、六种等其他个数呢？

根据我们第 1 讲中讲过的推论一，在英语句子成分中，最重要的是谓语动词。它是一个句子的灵魂。有没有动词，能决定相应的结构是不是句子，而是什么样的动词，能决定是哪种类型的句子，即哪种句型结构。由此可见，英语中有五种简单句句型是源于英语中有五种不同类型的动词，而不同类型的动词，形成了五种不同的句子结构。

你知道吗？

专有名词的命名会是我们学习语法的一个线索，看到相应的名称，就可以大概推出它的基本性质和用法。比如，非谓语动词。从命名上就知道，这个结构不是谓语，在句中不能充当谓语成分。比如，不及物动词。及，表示“跟着”，因此不及物动词就表示动词之后不能接东西。这样的例子还有很多，大家可以用心体会。

接下来，我们分类来看：

1. 第一类：不及物动词（vi）

不及物动词，即后面不接东西的动词，因此由这一类动词做谓语，形成的句法结构是

主语——谓语

例如：

It all depends.

The stain doesn’t show.

I waited and waited.

I see.

在这些例句中，动词之后都没有再接名词性的结构，是主谓结构。

2. 第二类：及物动词（vt）

及物动词，即后面加东西的动词，因此由这一类动词做谓语，形成的句法结构是

主语——谓语——宾语

主谓宾结构是英语中最常见的句子结构。同时，也是 SAT 语法中出现最多的主干结构。例如：

Slience means consent.

I have ordered my meal.

He loves music.

I called a taxi.

I see you.

在这些例句中，动词后有名词，即动词后接了东西，因此是主谓宾结构。

3. 第三类：接双宾的动词

在及物动词中，将动词的用法进行细分，有一类动词只接一个宾语没有办法完整表意，需要两个宾语一同将语义表达完整，当这一类动词做谓语时，形成的结构就是

主语——谓语——间接宾语——直接宾语

在英语中，这类接双宾语的动词需要大家在学习时进行积累，最常见的是表达给予性的动词用这一结构。例如：

He passed her the bread.

Jack promised me the book.

We elected Obama the president.

Call me Linda.

John showed me the picture.

这些例句都是句中有四个成分，动词是双宾语动词。

4. 第四类：接宾语 + 宾语补足语的动词

在及物动词中，将动词的用法进行细分，还有一类动词接一个宾语无法完整表意，需要宾语补足语将其补充说明，形成的结构就是

主语——谓语——宾语——宾语补足语

在英语中，表使役类的动词常用宾语 + 宾语补足语的结构。例如：

He found the work dull.

The news made her happy.

You should keep the window open.

Most people considered him guilty.

这些例句都是句中有四个成分，是主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语的结构。

由于在第三类和第四类简单句句型中，句子成分都是四个，容易搞混，下面我们来看两个例句，并思考两个例句分别是什么句型结构。

例 2-1　I give you a book.

例 2-2　Love makes the world beautiful.

例 2-1 是主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语的结构，例 2-2 是主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语的结构。区分的方法很简单，我们从专有术语的命名来找线索。在中文命名习惯中，一般靠右边的词语体现的是本质，就如我们的名字，靠右的“名”是个体差异的集中体现。根据这一思路，主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语中，间接宾语、直接宾语靠右的都是“宾语”。由此可见，这两个成分的性质是一样的，同属宾语范畴，只是地位有高有低。主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语，宾语和宾语补足语属于不同范畴，宾语补足语是对

宾语有修饰限制，因此两者之间的关系是补足语修饰宾语，有修饰关系。

例2-1，“you”和“a book”之间没有修饰关系，同属宾语范畴，因此是主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语。例2-2，在“the world”和“beautiful”之间，beautiful修饰the world，因此是主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语结构。

对于较为简单的句子，我们可以通过对词间关系的理解对句子结构进行判定，但是，对于一些稍微复杂的句子，词间关系就不容易进行判断了，如例2-3：

例2-3　I want you to learn English.

此时，我们最需要将隐性结构关系显性化——使用be动词检验法，来判定动词之后的两个成分间是否有修饰关系。具体的方法是将be动词插入动词之后的两个成分中单独造句，如果句子可以说得通，说明两者之间有修饰关系，则结构是主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语。如果造的句子说不通，说明两者之间没有修饰关系，则句子结构是主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语。以例2-1和例2-2为例：

将例2-1中，动词之后的两个成分“you”和“a book”从句子中抽出，两者之间放be动词造句，即为“you are a book.”，很容易看出，这个句子不成立，因此说明两者没有修饰关系，所以是主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语的句子结构。

将例2-2中，动词后的两个成分“the world”和“beautiful”从句子中抽出，两者之间放be动词造句，即为“the world is beautiful.”，很容易看出，这个句子成立，说明两者之间有修饰关系，所以是主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语的句子结构。

我们再来看例2-3：

将例2-3中，动词后的两个成分“you”和“to learn English”从句子中抽出，两者之间放be动词造句，即为“you are to learn English.”。这个句子成立（be to do是英语当中的固定用法，表示将要做某事），由此判定两个成分之间有修饰关系，所以是主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语的结构。

5. 第五类：be动词

be动词结构与第二类及物动词的结构是大家最容易搞混的句型，因为两个结构都是在句中有三个成分。我们通过例句来分析两者的不同。

I am a teacher.

He loves music.

将这两句话进行翻译后，be动词am翻译成“是”，love翻译成“喜欢”。我们发现，“是”与“喜欢”是两类不同的动词。动词是表征动作的，“是”这类动词，只表现了动作的动感，却无法由单个动词“是”找到动作作用的方向。“喜欢”这类动词，即表现了动作的动感，又可以由它指出动作作用的方向。

由此可见，英语中将be动词和其他动词进行区分的最主要原因就是，be动词属于不完整表意动词，其他动词属于完整表意类动词。

因此，当句中谓语动词是be动词时，句子形成的结构是

主语——系动词——表语

我们将be动词称做系动词的原因也非常简单，系动词就是“是”动词，在汉语意思上“系”就是“是”的意思。

系动词，总让人觉得难以捉摸，因为从命名上看，觉得有些晦涩难懂。其实系动词就是本义是“是”这个意思的动词。我们都知道，起名可是大事，给专有名词起名更是大事中的大事。所以我们不能随随便便的用一个口语化的“是”字来给专有名词命名，叫做“是动词”。就如同，我们不能把类似于“狗蛋儿”，“铁锤”这类难登大雅之堂的叫法当做学名一样。因此，为了让这类动词的名字能高雅一些，就取了一个古汉语的“系”。“系”，就是“是”的意思。举个例子，张三，系四川人士。这里的系，就是“是”。

例如：

The boy is clever.

Frenchmen are romantic.

Michael Jackson was dead.

这些例句都是 be 动词做全句系动词，因此是主系表结构。

需要注意的是，be 动词只是系动词中最为常见的一类。除了 be 动词之外，感官动词可以当做系动词用。鉴定的方法就是感官动词用做系动词时，表示“……起来”。例如：

It sounds good.

The meat tastes awful.

The rose smells fragrant.

He looks tired.

I feel good.

这些感官动词翻译成“听起来”“尝起来”“闻起来”“看起来”“感觉起来”。

除了感官动词之外，一些表示转变的动词也可以用做系动词。例如：

He turned pale.

The little pond ran dry.

His dream comes true.

第 3 讲　句子成分的三大层级

在第 2 讲对简单句型的句型结构进行讲解之后，我们要继续深入地挖掘英语中句子结构的本质，为考生梳理出句法结构的大框架。除谓语成分外，每一个成分上可以放三种结构：从最小层级的词，到最大层级的句，再到保持中庸的非谓语。由此可见，句子不管有多复杂，每一个成分上都是由这三种层级不断排列组合构成的。在这一讲，我们将详细地梳理这三种层级，同时为大家揭示这三种层级的内在规律。

本讲内容安排如下：

3.1　词
3.2　句
3.3　非谓语结构

英语中句子的结构看起来眼花缭乱，各种长难句，各种让人眼晕的从句，有时还有一些让人匪夷所思的结构，让人不知所云。其实，英语是非常注重句法结构的语言，每一个句子的形成都有严格的语法规则在其中作指引，我们看不清、猜不透不是因为句子乱，而是因为我们乱，因为我们不讲章法。这一讲，会将英语的句法结构作一个深入剖析，分析英语中看似眼花缭乱的句子结构，将句法结构的章法给大家一个整体呈现。同时也让大家开始体会，英语的句法结构只要抓住核心点，其他的复杂结构不需要死记硬背，都可以由基本的逻辑思维推理出来。

我们由英语中最常见，同时也是 SAT 最常考的两个基本句型入手。

主语——谓语——宾语

主语——系动词——表语

我们知道，英语中一共有九大句子成分，分别是主语、谓语、宾语、表语、定语、状语、补语、同位语和插入语。为方便记忆，我们记为，“主谓宾表、定状补同插”。其中，“主谓宾表”是句子的主干成分，一般而言是不可或缺的。“定状补同插”属于修饰限制成分，一般附着在主干成分上存在。

我们将简单句型进行充实，加入常见的修饰成分，即形成下面的结构：

状语——定语——主语——谓语——宾语

状语——定语——主语——系动词——表语

3.1　词

首先我们来关注每一个成分上常见的词性。

名词，代词是一家。英文中，一个是 noun，一个是 pronoun。pro-noun，代的就是名词。因此，一般而言，在句子结构中，只要符合说话习惯，能放名词的地方就能放代词。

主语：名词，代词。

谓语：动词。

宾语：名词，代词。

系动词：be 动词及感官动词。

表语：名词，代词，形容词，介宾短语。

定语：形容词（为主）。

状语：副词（为主）。

我们可以看出，每一个成分上都可以放一个词。

例如：

My mother loves me. （主谓宾）

The box is heavy. （主系表）

上面的例句每一个成分上都放一个词，这也就是每个成分上可以放置的第一层级。而我们也知道，英语的句子不可能总这么简单，那么，更加复杂的句子结构是如何构成的呢？

需要明确一点，越简单的层级越体现该成分的本质。复杂的结构之所以能放置到相应的成分上，是因为它们都符合相应的性质。拿主语为例，该成分上可以放的第一层级，即最简层级是名词，那么其他复杂的结构能放在主语成分上的一定是相应的名词性质才可以。以此类推，其他成分上的各种结构也是同样的思路。因此，最简层级看似简单，却是最需要牢记的一个层次，因为其他层次都可以根据最简层级推理出来。

3.2 句

在英语的句法结构中，每个成分上都可以放置三种结构，也就是我们说的句子成分的三大层级。

接下来我们来看，在不同成分上可以放置的其他层级，如图 3-1 所示。

①词（最简单）————————|————————②句（最复杂）

③非谓语

图 3-1 句子成分的三大层级

第一层级是最简层级，即放置在这一成分上最简单的结构——词。每一个成分上可以放的词性我们在上文中梳理过。这是句子结构的核心。

第二层级是最复杂的层级，即能放置在这个成分上最复杂的结构——句。

在每一个成分上放一句话，就形成了相应成分上的从句。由此可见，在主语的位置上放一句话，叫主语从句；在宾语的位置上放一句话，叫宾语从句；在表语的位置上放一句话，叫表语从句；在定语的位置上放一句话，叫定语从句；在状语的位置上放一句话，叫状语从句。

什么是主语，宾语，表语的位置呢？

在句子成分中，我们知道“主谓宾表”是句子的主干成分，这些主干成分的区分都是由它们和谓语的关系来决定的。如果该成分在谓语前，就是主语的位置；在谓语后，就是宾语的位置。系动词前，是主语的位置；系动词后，是表语的位置。

什么是定语，状语的位置呢？

英语句子成分中，“定状补同插”是属于修饰限制成分。其中，定语和状语是最常见的修饰成分。既然称为修饰限制，就是说它们必须与相应的被修饰词捆绑出现。

定语是形容词性的，与名词形成捆绑关系。因此，定语的位置就是围绕着名词的修饰语。状语是副词性的，与动词或者形容词形成捆绑关系。因此，状语的位置就是在语义上对动词或者形容词形成修饰的位置。

该如何定义从句呢？我们通过专有术语的命名来找其中的线索。

从句，由从 + 句构成。

从，是从属的意思，为了表现从句的从属地位，从句句首必须有标记，这个标记就是我们大家熟知的从句的引导词。引导词的功能有两个：第一，标记句子的从属地位的标记；第二，有连接作用，可以用于连接两句话。

句，只要能叫做句的就要符合一个核心点，即结构当中有动词。

由此可见，判定从句的两大关键就是“引导词” + “动词”。符合这一要求后，再放在相应的位置，就形成了相应位置上的从句。

例 3-1　That the plates are moving is not beyond dispute.

例 3-1 有两个动词，分别是 are 和 is，有一个有连接作用的引导词 that，因此句子结构是正确的。分析句子结构发现，that the plates are moving 是由 that 引导的从句。这个从句符合了我们上面对“从句”的分析，有“从”——that，有“句”——are。这个从句放在了动词 is 之前，是主语的位置，因此是主语从句。

例 3-2　We know that knowledge is power.

例 3-2 有两个动词，分别是 know 和 is，有一个有连接作用的引导词 that，因此句子结构是正确的。分析句子结构发现，that knowledge is power 是由 that 引导的从句。这个从句符合了我们上面对“从句”的分析，有“从”——that，有“句”——is。这个从句放在了动词 know 之后，是宾语的位置，因此是宾语从句。

例 3-3　My problem is who he is.

例 3-3 有两个动词，分别是 is 和 is，有一个有连接作用的引导词 who，因此句子结构正确。分析句子结构发现，who he is 是由 who 引导的从句。这个从句符合了我们上面对“从句”的分析，有“从”——who，有“句”——is。这个从句放在了系动词 is 之后，是表语的位置，因此是表语从句。

例 3-4　The news that he won the game pleased everybody.

例 3-4 有两个动词，分别是 won 和 pleased，有一个连接作用的引导词 that，因此句子结构正确。分析句子结构发现，that he won the game 是由 that 引导的从句。这个从句符合了我们上面对“从句”的分析，有“从”——that，有“句”——won。这个从句放在了名词 news 之后，与 news 形成的是补充关系，是同位语的位置，因此是同位语从句。

例 3-5　I don’t like people who never keep their word.

例 3-5 有两个动词，分别是 like 和 keep，有一个有连接作用的关系代词 who，因此句子结构正确。分析句子结构发现，who never keep their word 是由 who 引导的从句。这个从句符合了我们上面对“从句”的分析，有“从”——who，有“句”——keep。这个从句放在了名词 people 之后，与 people 形成的是修饰关系，是定语的位置，因此是定

语从句。

例 3-6　I was telephoning when he arrived.

例 3-6 有两个动词，分别是 was 和 arrived，有一个有连接作用的关系代词 when，因此句子结构正确。分析句子结构发现，when he arrived 是由 when 引导的从句。这个从句符合了我们上面对“从句”的分析，有“从”——when，有“句”——arrived。这个从句与 was telephoning 形成修饰关系，是状语的位置，因此是状语从句。

那么，在谓语的位置上可以放一句话，叫谓语从句吗？

答案是否定的。在本书第 1 讲我们详细地讲过，“一句话里有且只有一个谓语动词”。由此延伸的三个推论中的一条，谓语 = 动词，谓语与动词绝对等同一一对应。因此，谓语部分只可以由动词充当，不可以是其他的任何情况。谓语部分比较特殊，没有三大层级一说。

最简层级反映这个成分的性质，其他各个结构放在相应的成分上需要满足相应的特性。我们可以推知，主语、宾语和表语是名词性的。定语是形容词性的，状语是副词性的。因此，主语、宾语和表语位置上的从句，可以称做名词性从句。定语位置上的从句可以称做形容词性从句，状语位置的从句称做副词性从句。在本书第 5 讲，我们会详细讲解这些从句。

3.3　非谓语结构

第三层级是折中层级，即不像“词”那么简单，也不像“句”那么复杂，能放在句中的第三层级就是非谓语结构。

从命名上可以推知，非谓语，不是谓语，相应的就不是动词。那么非谓语到底是什么呢？非谓语是动词的变形。我们来看一下英语中非谓语的三种形态：

to do

doing

done

它们都是由动词变形而来，但是经过变形以后的整体结构就不能再当做动词，或者不能充当句子的谓语成分了。请看例句：

例 3-7　I want to see you.

在这个句子里，我们看到了非谓语结构 to do。to see 跟在动词 want 之后，是宾语的位置，所以 to see 做宾语。

例 3-8　Seeing is believing.

在这个句子里，我们有两个非谓语结构，seeing 和 believing。seeing 在动词 is 之前，是主语的位置，做主语。believing 在 is 之后，是表语的位置，做表语。

例 3-9　The woman coming from Paris is my sister.

在这个句子中，有一个非谓语结构 coming from Paris，这个结构放在名词 woman 之后，与 woman 形成修饰关系，是定语的位置，做定语。

例 3-10　Seen from the hill, the town is beautiful.

这个句子中，seen from the hill 是非谓语结构。这个结构用于修饰句子，是状语的位置，做状语。

在本书第 6 讲中我们会详细地讲解非谓语的用法以及每一种结构所能充当的句子成分。

第 4 讲　词

词是句子结构的第一层级，即最简层级。在这一讲，我们对一些基本的词性以及它们的用法进行梳理。

本讲内容安排如下：

4.1　名词

4.2　代词

4.3　形容词和副词

4.4　介词

词是句子成分的第一层级，也是最核心的层级。词也是构成句子的最小单位。因此对词的把握是学习句法结构的基础。这一讲，我们对 SAT 语法中常考到的词性进行讲解，常见词性如表 4-1。

表 4-1　常见词性

词　性	英 文 名	作　用	示　例
名词	n.	表示人或者事物的名称	cup，man
代词	pron.	用来代替名词或数词，从本质上讲，和名词是同类	it，some
形容词	adj.	用来修饰名词或代词	beautiful，smart
副词	adv.	用来修饰动词或形容词	very，finally
动词	v.	表示动作或状态，是句子的核心	run，beat
介词	prep.	用于名词或代词之前，表示与别的词的关系	on，for
连接词	conj.	用于连接句子	but，if

4.1　名词

名词是用于表示人或事物名称的词。在句中一般做主语、宾语、表语或同位语等成分。在一些特殊的表达下，名词也可以用做定语。名词从类别上看可以分为两大类：专有名词（proper nouns）和普通名词（common nouns）。

专有名词主要是指人名、地名或某类人或某类物的名称。专有名词的首字母要大写。

例如：

人名：Jack，President Bush，Mr. Green

地名：Australia，the Yellow River

某类人：Chinese，Japanese，Russians

某类事：Buddhism，Geneva Conference

月份、星期及节日：June，Monday，Thanksgiving Day

书名及电影名：*Gone with the wind*，*Transformer*

人称：Mum，Aunt，Uncle Tom

普通名词可以继续细分，一般可以分为个体名词和集体名词，物质名词和抽象名词。其中个体名词和集体名词可以用数来计，称为可数名词（countable nouns）。物质名词和抽象名词是无法以数来计的，称为不可数名词（uncountable nouns）。

因此名词的分类如下：

- 名词
  - 专有名词
  - 普通名词
    - 个体名词、集体名词 → 可数名词
    - 物质名词、抽象名词 → 不可数名词

其中，常见的个体名词、集体名词、物质名词和抽象名词，见表 4-2。

表 4-2　常见的个体名词、集体名词、物质名词和抽象名词

种　类	示　意	例　词
个体名词	作为个体而存在的人或事	actor，adult，artist，baby，boy，bus，ease，castle，college，computer，edge，dream
集体名词	由个体组成的集体，看做整体时用单数，强调包含的成员时做复数	army，audience，bacteria，community，company，council，crew，data，enemy，family，flock，government，group，herd，jury，media，navy，police，public，staff，team
物质名词	不可分成个体的物质	cake，cheese，cloth，coal，coffee，cotton，fabric，fuel，fur，glue，ice，ink，iron，jam，jelly，juice，meat，medicine，metal，milk，oil，paper，perfume，plastics，rain，sand，salt，soil，soup，steel，sugar，tea，wine，wood，wool
抽象名词	抽象概念的名称	age，anger，beauty，behavior，cancer，capacity，childhood，comfort，concern，duty，economy，education，energy，environment，evil，fashion，freedom，growth，happiness，love，music，pleasure，policy，poverty，power，respect，safety，time，trust，truth，violence，weather

在 SAT 语法中，对名词的考查主要集中在名词的可数性上。由于汉语对名词的单复数不作区分，而英语中对名词单复数的区分又变幻多样，所以是学习以及考试中的一个难点。

只有个体名词和集体名词这两大类有名词单复数的区分。而集体名词较为复杂。当把集体名词看做一个整体时，不作单复数区分，例如：

The internet contains much useful information.

The company supplies kitchen equipment.

在物质名词和抽象名词中，有许多名词都可以兼做可数名词和不可数名词，但意思不同。可数名词与不可数名词的转换，见表4-3。

表4-3　可数名词与不可数名词的转换

物质名词（不可数）	个体名词（可数）
copper 铜	a copper 铜币
gold 金子	a gold 金牌
paper 纸	a paper 报纸，论文
wood 木头	a wood 树林
抽象名词（不可数）	个体名词（可数）
authority 权威	an authority 权威人士
democracy 民主	a democracy 民主国家
pleasure 高兴	a pleasure 使人感到愉快的事
power 力量	a power 大国

除此以外，英语中还有很多对词，一个可数，另一个不可数，具体情况，见表4-4。

表4-4　成对出现的可数名词与不可数名词

可 数 名 词	不可数名词
a poem 一首诗	poetry 诗歌
a machine 一台机器	machinery 机器
a job 一件工作	work 工作
a laugh 一阵笑声	laughter 笑声
a loaf 一块面包	bread 面包

从这些例子可以看出，名词的可数与不可数是一个复杂的不规则问题，需要有意识地积累这方面的知识。

英语中有少数名词的单数形式和复数形式相同，见表4-5。

表4-5　单复数同形的名词

bison 野牛	deer 鹿	cod 鳕鱼	fish 鱼
shellfish 贝壳动物	halibut 大比目鱼	trout 鳟鱼	goldfish 金鱼
craft 船	spacecraft 宇宙飞船	Chinese 中国人	Vietnamese 越南人

英语中有一些名词常用复数形式。其中有些表示两部分构成，有些是-ing 结尾，见表4-6。

表 4-6　常见的复数形式名词

braces 背带	ear-phones 耳机	glasses 眼镜	pants 裤子
scissors 剪刀	trousers 裤子	nail-clippers 指甲刀	jeans 工装裤
belongings 所有物	doings 行为	earnings 挣的钱	findings 调查结果
savings 储蓄	surroundings 环境	writings 作品	sweepings 垃圾

4.2　代词

代词是用于指代名词的词。因此，从本质上讲，代词与名词是同类，在句子中放置的位置与名词大致相同。代词一般在句中做主语、宾语、表语或同位语的成分。从类别上讲，代词可以分为人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、相互代词、指示代词、疑问代词、连接代词、关系代词和不定代词。根据 SAT 语法中对代词的考试方向，我们主要讲解的内容是人称代词及它的格和反身代词等。

1. 人称代词及它的格

常见的人称代词，见表 4-7。

表 4-7　人称代词

	单　数			复　数		
	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称
主格	I	you	he/she/it	we	you	they
宾格	me	you	him/her/it	us	you	them

在 SAT 语法考试中，我们主要需要搞清的就是人称代词的主格和宾格形式。这是代词中常见的一个语法现象。比如，第一人称的主格是 I，宾格是 me。因此要注意，在主语的位置使用主格，在宾语的位置使用宾格。例如：

I know what you mean.（动词之前是主语，用主格）

Wait me, please.（动词之后是宾语，用宾格）

Jack kept faith with me.（介词之后是宾语，用宾格）

2. 反身代词

反身代词是回指自己的代词，一般有以下几种：myself，yourself，himself，herself，itself，ourselves，yourselves，themselves。使用反身代词时需要注意，在一句话的范围内，需要有反身对象。例如：

Mary dressed herself.（反身代词做宾语）

Judy herself was to blame for it.（反身代词做同位语）

I haven't been myself again.（反身代词做表语）

我们看到，以上例句，不管反身代词在句中是什么成分，在句子范围内都能够找到反身代词的反身对象。如果发现句中找不到反身对象，说明这句话是错误的。例如：

He loves myself.（错误，myself 找不到反身对象）

4.3　形容词和副词

1. 形容词

形容词是用于修饰名词的词，用来说明事物或人的性质和特征。通常，可将形容词分成性质形容词和叙述形容词两类。

直接说明事物的性质或特征的形容词是性质形容词。它有级的变化，可以用程度副词修饰，**在句中可做定语、表语或补语。**如，clever，beautiful 等。这类形容词做定语修饰名词时，要放在名词之前。比如，a clever boy。但是如果形容词修饰以-thing 为字尾的词语时，要放在这些词后。比如，something different。

叙述形容词只能做表语，所以又叫表语形容词。这类形容词没有级的变化，也不能用程度副词修饰。大多数以 a-开头的形容词都属于这类。如，alike，alive，alone 等。例如：

She is an afraid girl.（错）

She is afraid.（对）

最常见的形容词词尾有-ful，-ive 等。以-ly 结尾一般是副词。但是，有一些形容词较为特殊，是以-ly 结尾的，需要特别记忆，如，friendly，deadly，lovely，lonely，likely，lively，ugly，brotherly。另外有一些以-ly 结尾的词，既可以当形容词，又可以当副词，如，daily，weekly，monthly，yearly，early。例如：

I got up early.（副词，修饰 get up）

The early bird gets its worm.（形容词，修饰 bird）

2. 副词

副词主要用来修饰动词或形容词，在句中做状语成分。副词在句中的位置较为灵活。一般而言，副词放在动词之前，be 动词或者助动词之后。当出现多个助动词时，副词一般放在第一个助动词后。例如：

I finally finished my homework.

He was desperately ill.

在句中通常可以几个副词一起连用，一同修饰。但是有一定的排列顺序。一般是程度副词＋地点副词＋方式副词＋时间副词。例如：

The boy is crying loudly in his room now.

3. 形容词与副词的比较级

大多数形容词（性质形容词）和副词有比较级和最高级的变化，即有原级、比较级和最高级，用来表示事物的等级差别。在 SAT 语法中，对形容词的比较级和最高级有所考查。首先要明确的一点是，**两者相比用比较级，两者以上的比较用最高级。**而比较级和最高级有规则和不规则变化两种情况。

（1）规则变化。单音节词和少数双音节词，加词尾-er，-est 来构成比较级和最高级。有以下几种情况：

1）一般单音节词词尾，加-er，-est，例如，taller，tallest；greater，greatest。

2）以不发音的 e 结尾的单音词和少数以-le 结尾的双音节词只加-r，-st，例如 nicer，nicest；larger，largest。

3）以一个辅音字母结尾的闭音节单音节词，双写辅音字母，加-er，-est，例如 bigger，biggest；hotter，hottest。

4）以辅音字母 + y 结尾的双音节词，变 y 为 i 加-er，-est，例如 busier，busiest；easier，easiest。

5）少数以-er，-ow 结尾的双音节词末尾加-er，-est，例如 cleverer，cleverest；narrower，narrowest。

6）其他双音节词和多音节词在前面加 more，most 来构成，例如 more important，most important。

（2）不规则变化。不规则变化的比较级和最高级没有变化规律，重在积累。例如：

原　级	比　较　级	最　高　级
good/well	better	best
bad/ill	worse	worst
little	less	least

4.4　介词

介词是一种用来表示词与词或词与句之间关系的虚词，在句中不能单独做句子成分。介词后面一般有名词或相当于名词的词在其后当它的宾语。介词和它后边的宾语构成介宾短语，介宾短语在句中看做统一整体，不可拆分。在句中可以充当状语、表语或定语等成分。从词形上看，介词可以分为简单介词、合成介词、带-ing 词尾的介词和成语介词。常见介词的种类见表 4-8。

表 4-8　常见介词的种类

介 词 种 类	例　　词
简单介词 simple preposition	about，above，across，after，along，around，as，at，before，behind，below，beside，between，beyond，for，from，in，like，on，of，off，over，through，towards，under，with，up，via，despite
合成介词 compound preposition	inside，into，onto，out of，outside，throughout，upon，within，without，therefore，heretofore
带-ing 词尾的介词 preposition with - ing	barring，concerning，considering，excepting，excluding，failing，following，including，pending，regarding
成语介词 phrasal preposition	according to，along with，apart from，as for，because of，but for，due to，except for，in front of，in place of，instead of，in spite of，prior to，up to，with regard to

介词与后面的名词性结构统一形成介宾短语做句子成分。例如：

They flew from Paris to Hong Kong.（介宾做状语）

I am eager for your news.（介宾做状语）

It seems that he knows the solution to the problem.（介宾做定语）

One of us will be chosen to go to Harvard University.（介宾做定语）

He is in the classroom. （介宾做表语）
He is like a son to me. （介宾做表语）

第 5 讲 从 句

从句是句子结构的第二层级。根据最简层级反映出的每个成分的性质，我们可以推出，从句也分为三类，分别为，名词性从句、副词性从句和形容词性从句。

本讲的内容安排如下：

5.1 名词性从句——主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句

5.2 副词性从句——状语从句

5.3 形容词性从句——定语从句

回顾我们之前分析过的“从句”这一概念，任何**一个从句都要同时满足“从”和“句”——需要有引导词，有动词。**而不同的从句只是在“从”上有区分，说得更明白一些，不同类型的从句是在引导词上做文章。因此，我们在学习从句时的重点在于认清不同的从句分别是由哪些词来引导的。

通过本书第 3 讲的学习，我们知道，从句是句子成分上的第二个层级。符合“从”（有引导词）和“句”（有动词）两个条件的句子，放置在相应的成分上，就形成相应成分上的从句。放在主语的位置（动词之前），就是主语从句；放在宾语的位置（动词之后），就是宾语从句；放在表语的位置（系动词后），就是表语从句；放在定语的位置（修饰名词），就是定语从句；放在状语的位置（修饰动词或形容词），就是状语从句。

在本书第 3 讲中，我们也提到了，看似简单的第一层级——词的层面，反映的是整个相应成分的性质，也就是说，第二、第三层级中什么样的结构能放在相应的成分上都需要满足这个成分的性质。通过这个思路，我们将从句进行一个归类，不再简单地叫主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、状语从句和定语从句。看看这几个从句有没有哪些共同的性质。

主语上可以放的词是名词和代词，由此我们推出主语是名词性质的，因此能放在主语位置的从句应该是名词性的。宾语和主语一样，都是名词做宾语，因此能放在宾语位置的从句应该是名词性的。可以做表语的词较多，分别有名词、代词、形容词和介宾短语，但是，表语的核心词性是名词性的，因为表语是跟在动词后的，因此在表语位置上的从句可以归类为名词性从句。充当状语的词性往往是副词，因此我们推出在状语位置上的从句是副词性质。充当定语的词性常常是形容词，由此推出在定语位置上的从句是形容词性的。

这样，我们就把从句归类成三大从句，即名词性从句，副词性从句和形容词性从句。这样归类的优点是，使我们对相应从句的性质及用法更为清晰。

首先，我们讨论名词性从句。

5.1 名词性从句——主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句

在英语中，名词除了主要充当主语、宾语和表语以外，还有我们暂未提到过的同位语。如果把句子当名词用，分别充当另一句话的主语、宾语、表语和同位语，便构成了主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。因为这四种从句在本质上相当于名词，所以统称名词性从句。

而什么样的句子可以用做名词性从句呢？它们的引导词又有哪些呢？

我们用一句话来概括名词性从句的实质：三种句子充当四种成分。

> 一提到成分，应该马上想到从“主、谓、宾、表、定、状、补、同、插”当中抽取，这是英语中的九大句子成分。名词性从句是“三种句子充当四种成分”，我们应当抽取由名词充当的句子成分，它们分别是主语、宾语、表语和同位语。

三种句子分别为陈述句、一般疑问句和特殊疑问句。四种成分，即主语、宾语、表语和同位语。根据我们在本书第 3 讲中对从句的学习，我们知道三种句子只符合了从句中“句”的表现，而“从”还没有体现。不同的从句其实就在“从”，这个引导词上有所不同。

1. 三种句子如何变成合法的从句

（1）陈述句做句子成分。陈述句，从形态上看，一般是以句点结尾的句子。当用陈述句充当句子成分的时候，在句首加 that，形成 that + 陈述句的整体结构后，放在相应的主语、宾语、表语或同位语的位置，就形成了相应的名词性从句。

例 5-1　陈述句：Knowledge is power.

变形：that + knowledge is power

当做一个整体，分别放在主语、宾语、表语或同位语的位置。

1）That knowledge is power is an undoubted fact.（主语从句：动词之前）

2）I think that knowledge is power.（宾语从句：动词之后）

3）My idea is that knowledge is power.（表语从句：系动词之后）

4）The fact that knowledge is power is accepted by most of people.（同位语从句：内容填充式名词之后）

引导词——that 的作用有两个：第一，体现了从句的从属地位，是从句的标签；第二，有连接作用，连接了两句话，两个动词，“is，is”。

我们也可以看出，这个 that 在整个句子中不充当任何成分，同时也没有语义，那么它是否可以省略呢？

比如例 5-1 第 1）句，

That knowledge is power is an undoubted fact.

是否可以改为 Knowledge is power is an undoubted fact.

答案是否定的。

我们在理解语言时，按照书写的顺序是从左往右开始分析。当读到 knowledge 的时候，

将其解析为名词性质，可充当主语。读到 is 时，解析为系动词，可充当谓语。读到 power 时，名词，可充当表语。此时一个句子的主干结构已经分析完毕，按逻辑，后边即使有结构，也应该是修饰类结构。而此时，在读到另一个系动词 is 时，理解就陷入了混乱。这样的句子是不符合逻辑的，势必要进行重新阅读。

而当我们在从句句首加一个 that 后，能够自动将 that 后出现的句子进行统一的捆绑，当做一个成分，不会引起句子理解的歧义。所以 that 相当于给大脑理解语言的提示，告诉它，that 后的一个句子是一个整体成分，因此就不会引起句子理解的歧义。所以，由 that 引导的陈述句做主语、表语或同位语时，虽然 that 没有语义，不充当成分，也是不能省略的。

为什么在简单宾语从句中的 that 可以省略呢？

看例 5-1 第 2）句，

I think that knowledge is power. 可以说成 I think knowledge is power.

分析方法和上面的一样。从左往右分析句子，读到 I 时，解析为代词，可以充当主语。读到 think 解析为动词，可以充当谓语。到此，一个句子的主谓结构分析完毕，后边的全做宾语。即使没有引导词 that，也可以自动将后面的成分看成一个统一结构，而不会引起句子理解的歧义。

由此，我们进行陈述句做句子成分的总结：陈述句充当名词性从句的成分，要在陈述句的句首加 that，与陈述句形成一个统一结构后，放在主语、宾语、表语或同位语的位置，形成相应的主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句或同位语从句。that 在句子中既不做成分也没有意义，但是因句子理解的需要，一般不可省略。只有在宾语从句中，在不影响句子的理解的情况下，可以将其省略。

（2）一般疑问句做句子成分。一般疑问句，是由 yes 或 no 来回答的疑问句。一般疑问句做另一个句子的句子成分时要分两步走，首先要将一般疑问句的倒装语序变成正装，然后在句首加 whether 或者 if，形成统一结构后，放在主语、宾语、表语或同位语的成分上，形成相应的从句。

例 5-2　一般疑问句：Is he your brother?（用 yes 或 no 来回答的疑问句）

变形：

1）倒装变正装：He is your brother.

2）句首加 whether/if

whether/if he is your brother

当做一个整体，放在主语、宾语、表语或同位语的位置上，形成相应的从句。

1）Whether he is your brother is none of my business.（主语从句：动词之前）

2）I don't know whether/if he is your brother.（宾语从句：动词之后）

3）My question is whether he is your brother.（表语从句：系动词后）

4）My roommates argued over the question whether he is your brother.（同位语从句：内容填充式名词之后）

引导词——whether/if 的作用有两个：第一，体现从句的从属地位；第二，连接了两个句子，两个动词。whether/if 在句中不充当成分，但是有“是否”的含义，因此不可以

省略。

而 whether 和 if 在用法上是否一致呢？

英语中规定，**在引导名词性从句时，whether 可以用于引导每一个名词性从句，而 if 只能用于引导宾语从句。**这也是为什么，只有在例 5-2 第 2）句当中，我们才做了 whether/if 的替换。

（3）特殊疑问句做句子成分。英语中的特殊疑问句一般是由特殊疑问词来提问的，即 wh-词。比如，what，when，where，why。当然这里要加上 how。

特殊疑问句做另一个句子的成分，不需要另加引导词，因为特殊疑问词本身就可以充当句子的引导词。只需要将特殊疑问句的倒装语序变成正装语序。

例 5-3　特殊疑问句：What is your name？（由 wh-特殊疑问词来提问的疑问句）

变形：倒装变正装 what your name is. 特殊疑问词就是从句的引导词。

当做统一整体，放在主语、宾语、表语或同位语的位置上，形成相应的从句。

1）What your name is is my question.（主语从句：动词之前）

2）I don't know what your name is.（宾语从句：动词之后）

3）My question is what your name is.（表语从句：系动词后）

4）There arose the question what your name is.（同位语从句：内容填充式名词之后）

引导词——wh-词的作用有两个：第一，体现从句的从属地位；第二，连接了两个句子，两个动词。wh-词较为特殊，既有在句中充当成分的 what，who，whom，又有在句中不充当成分的 when，where，why，how 等。但是有一点，它们都在句中有语义。所以 wh-不可以省略。

名词性从句的内容非常简单，只要记清楚名词性从句的实质——三种句子充当四种成分即可。在这个实质的延伸下，很容易知道名词性从句的引导词分别有哪些，即 that（用于引导陈述句），whether/if（用于引导一般疑问句），wh-词（用于引导特殊疑问句）。

2. 主语从句，宾语从句，表语从句，同位语从句常见的语法现象

（1）主语从句。主语从句中，为了避免句子头重脚轻，经常使用 it 做形式主语，将主语从句的部分放在后面。例如：

That English is important is an undoubted fact.

—It is an undoubted fact that English is important.

That the world is round is a fact.

—It is a fact that the world is round.

It 的形式主语会构成一些固定结构，例如：

It is said that

It is believed that

It is universally accepted that

It is estimated that

It must be admitted that

It is obvious that

It is widely-accepted that

It cannot be denied that

It goes without saying that

It is not yet known whether

（2）宾语从句。宾语从句，是放在宾语位置的一句话。在英语中，宾语的位置除了我们常见的“主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”的宾语位置，还有“主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语”，介宾和“主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语”中宾语的位置。

1）双宾中的宾语从句（主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语）。例如：

I assure you that I had no intention of offending you.

Professor Lee's book will show you how what you have observed can be used in other contexts.

They gave who came to the meeting a pamphlet.

2）介宾中的宾语从句。例如：

There is disagreement among economists about what money is and how money is measured.

3）复合宾语中的宾语从句（主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语）

当宾语从句出现在“主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语”的复合宾语中时，为了避免头重脚轻，经常由 it 充当形式宾语，将真正的宾语后置处理。例如：

We believe it true that the human body is also a kind of good conductor.

We must make it clear that the parties involved are to make every effort to curb the pollution.

宾语从句一般要和主句的时态进行呼应，如果主句是过去时，宾语从句的时态应该是“过去”范畴的某时态。例如：

He said he would fly to Egypt next day.

而如果宾语从句表示的是客观真理或普遍现象时，从句部分可以保持“现在”范畴的时态。例如：

The teacher told us that light travels faster than sound.

（3）表语从句。表语从句，是在系动词后的一句话。一般而言，我们需要认准系动词 is 等。例如：

The only certainty is that nothing is certain.

The test of our progress is whether we can provide enough for those who have too little.

（4）同位语从句。同位语从句，是跟在一些客观性名词（如 news，fact，idea，hope，promise，problem，possibility）之后，对名词进行内容填充、解释或说明的句子。例如：

We hold this truth to be self-evident that all men are created equal.

I have been left with the knowledge that it's better to expect nothing than to give everything and then be disappointed.

有时，为了避免句子头重脚轻，也会将从句后移，形成分裂结构

1）n. + 定语 + that + 陈述句。例如：

The statement by the driver of the vehicle that he did not see the lorry was rejected by the Court.

为了避免句子头重脚轻，英语一般喜欢把短结构放前，长结构放后。这句话中 statement 的同位语从句 that he did not see the lorry was rejected by the Court 放在了做后置定语的 by the driver 之后。

2）n. + 谓语 + that + 陈述句。例如：

Evidence came up that specific speech sounds are recognized by babies as young as 6 months old.

这个句子和上面的例句一样，都是为了避免头重脚轻，把短结构放前，长结构放后。将 evidence 的同位语从句 that specific speech sounds are recognized by babies as young as 6 months old 放在了句子的谓语之后。

同位语从句因为与定语从句的位置相像，都放在名词代词之后，因此，两者在学习的初级阶段较容易混淆。具体的区分方法，我们将在定语从句的部分进行详细的讲解。

5.2 副词性从句——状语从句

状语，是用来修饰动词或者形容词的成分，一般由副词充当。状语从句，即在充当状语的位置放了一句话。状语从句在英语中的类别较多，根据作用的不同，我们可以将其分为以下九类状语从句：时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、条件、让步、比较和方式。看似种类繁多，但理解起来并不难。因为从本质上讲，状语从句就是用不同的连接词将几个句子连接，用来表达分句之间特定的逻辑关系。所以状语从句的掌握要点是，掌握不同状语从句相应的连接词。

1. 时间状语从句

常见连接词：when，while，as，before，after，since，till，until，as soon as

特殊连接词：

1）next time，every time，the + 时间名词，如 the time，the day，the year，the moment，the instant；

2）instantly，immediately，directly；

3）no sooner. . . than，hardly. . . when，scarcely. . . when.

从本质上讲，时间状语从句是用来说明主句动词与从句动词发生在时间上的先后关系的。最常见的时间状语从句是由 when，while 等连接的。例如：

He got married when he graduated from college.

总体来说，when 做连接词连接时间状语从句的情况最为常见，但是用法也相对复杂。但是对于 SAT 语法考试来讲，考生只需要在头脑中有一个概念，即，主句和从句的时态要配套即可。换句话说就是，主句是过去，从句也要是过去，主句是现在，从句也要是现在。例如：

We started our meeting when he arrived. （主句一般过去时 + 从句一般过去时）

他到达后，我们开始开会。

I had started my dinner when he arrived. （主句过去完成时 + 从句一般过去时）

他到的时候，我已经开始吃饭了。

The door was knocked when I was singing. （主句过去时 + 从句过去进行时）

我正唱歌的时候，有人敲门。

I will talk to him when he arrives. （主句一般将来时 + 从句一般现在时）

他来的时候，我要和他谈谈。

I will attend the meeting when I have had my lunch. （主句一般将来时 + 从句现在完成时）

我吃完午饭就去开会。

根据以上例句，我们需要了解，when 在时间状语从句中，主句和从句的时态必须是同一范畴。主句是过去相应的时态（如，一般过去时、过去进行时、过去完成时都叫过去相应），从句也是过去相应的时态；主句是现在相应的时态，从句也是一样。

（1）until 的用法。until 表示一个动作（主句动作）一直持续到某个时间点。因此，until 主句中的谓语动词必须是延续性的，until 从句的谓语动词是不可延续动词，或者直接接时间点。从本质上讲，until 即是连接词，又是介词。区分的方法非常简单，当 until 后面加一个句子的时候，until 就是连接词，当 until 后加一个名词的时候，就是介词。SAT 在 2012 年的真题中对词性转化的辨别是有考查的，因此需要特别注意。例如：

I will be away from my home until he calls me.

我一直不回家，直到他打电话叫我。

而如果主句不用延续性动词，改用不可延续动词时，主句要用否定形式，即 not... until... 的结构（直到……才……）。例如：

I didn't realize how popular Michael Jackson was until he died.

直到迈克尔·杰克逊去世后，我才意识到他有多火。

I didn't get up until 10 o'clock this morning.

直到今早 10 点，我才起床。

以上两个 not... until... 句型的例句较为简单，但是，需要注意的是由 not... until... 产生的各种句子的变体有较强的迷惑性。

1）until 放句首。例如：

Until 10 o'clock this morning, I didn't get up.

直到今早十点，我才起床。

Until recently, I didn't read this book.

直到最近，我才看这本书。

这个句子一定要防止理解成“直到最近，我都没有看这本书”。因为很明显，这句话是将 I didn't read this book until recently 中的状语部分放前变形，因此意思不应该有所改变。所以，当在主句中看到了否定副词，或者否定意思与 until 连用时，要翻译成“直到……才……”。

2）Not until 的倒装。否定副词 not 放句首，句子形成部分倒装，因此将句子结构变成 Not until...，助动词 + 主语 + 谓语。

需要注意，Not until 的倒装是主句倒装，而不是从句倒装。例如：

Not until recently, did I read this book.

Not until 10 o'clock this morning, did I get up.

3）强调句。Not until...，助动词 + 主语 + 谓语的句子可以变形为 it be... that... 的强调句。这种用法在 SAT 语法中有所考查。例如：

It was not until recently that I read this book.

It was not until 10 o' clock this morning that I got up.

强调句的区分方法是，如果将 it be... that... 从句子中去掉，剩下的部分还是一个完

整不缺成分的句子。同时，我们也注意到，这种 Not until... 的结构变成强调句之后，主句不再倒装。

（2）by the time 的用法。by the time 从形态上看是一个介宾短语，而其实在用法上来讲，by the time 是可以充当连接词的，即前后可以连接两句话。它的意思是“在……之前”。by the time 最常见的用法是，主句用完成时，从句用一般时。例如：

We had waited for him for an hour by the time he arrived.（主句过去完成时 + 从句一般过去时）

在他来之前，我们等了他一个小时。

We will have already left by the time he arrives.（主句将来完成时 + 从句一般现在时）

在他来之前，我们就准备离开了。

2. 比较状语从句

常见连接词：as，than

特殊连接词：the more... the more，just as... so，not... so much as

比较状语从句是中国学生较难掌握的一种句型结构，是一个学习的难点。同时，比较结构又是 SAT 语法考试中的一个考试要点。中国学生在比较结构上常常犯错的原因就是会有意无意地运用中式思维进行翻译，而全然不顾句子本身的结构和想表现的逻辑。

（1）than 的基本用法。我们先来看在比较结构中较为常见的 than 的用法。than 既可以做连接词，又可以做介词。当 than 后面是一个句子的时候，than 就是连接词的功能，than 加上后面的部分一起合称比较状语从句；than 后面不接一个句子时，than 是一个介词，与后面的部分合称比较状语结构。但在语义上都表现为“比”。例如：

He is taller than Jack.（比较主语）

他比杰克高。

When they were asked to compare Norman Rockwell's paintings to Robert Rauschenberg's, the students entered in to a prolonged discussion.（比较宾语）

当学生们被要求去比较诺曼·罗克韦尔和罗伯特·劳申贝格的画作时，他们开始了一个旷日持久的讨论。

There is probably no story more dramatic than Hank Aaron's.（比较表语）

应该不会有比汉克·阿伦的故事更为传奇的故事了。

我们可以看出，以上三个例句分别是对句子的主语、宾语和表语等主干成分进行比较的。在这种情况下，前后两个部分的比较中心要一致，即保证前后所提到的比较对象是同类可比的。如以上例句 He 和 Jack（主语），Norman Rockwell's paintings 和 Robert Rauschenberg's（宾语），story 和 Hank Aaron's（表语）均是同类事物进行比较。

继续来看例句：

He is taller than Jack is.

Anxious social climbers are more likely to succeed in the society than are those with little ambition.

我们发现，以上例句在 than 之后使用了动词，即 than 相当于引导词连接了比较状语从句。而动词在用法上有在主语之后的，如 than Jack is，有放在主语之前的，如 than are

those。在比较状语中，than 后的结构动词可有可无，可前可后。我们需要关注的是前后两个部分比较的是不是同类事物。

除了上面一类比较状语从句以外，再来看另一种比较状语从句：

More visitors from United States visited museum in Great Britain than in Canada.

Man always thinks more about woman's appearance than about woman's personality.

这两个例句在 than 后面接的是介宾短语做的状语。由于在比较状语中，than 后面接的部分往往是可以将相同项进行省略的。这句话如果说成完整版应该是，

More visitors from United States visited museum in Great Britain than visitors from United States visited museum in Canada.

因为 visitors from United States visited museum 部分与前句一致，所以省略，只剩下介宾结构 in Canada。根据句型分析，可以看出，这个句子比较的前后两个部分的状语成分“in Great Britain”和“in Canada”。在比较结构中，如果比较的是状语成分，那么状语部分的介词一定不能省略，如写成 in Great Britain than Canada，会造成句子结构不清。

根据以上的讲解，必须清楚的一点是，比较状语一定要以分析句子结构为主，以此为基础来理解句子的准确含义。

（2）as 的基本用法。as 引导比较状语从句时，一般以 as. . . as. . . 的组合出现。前一个 as 是副词，后一个是连接词。因此，常见的搭配是 as + adj. + as. . . 或者 as + adv. + as. . . 。例如：

Jack presented the report as effectively as Tom.

Jack's report is as effective as Tom's.

需要注意的是 as. . . as. . . 之间是形容词或者副词都可以使用的，具体用哪一个需要根据句子的结构需要，同时要保证句子前后的比较对象一致。

1）not so much. . . as 句型。

SAT 考试中考查过 not so much. . . as 的句型。这种句型有两种使用方法，既可以是 not A so much as B，也可以用做 not so much A as B。其中 A 和 B 使用时需要结构平行一致。这个句型的意思是“与其说 A，倒不如说 B”。例如：

It wasn't so much his appearance I liked as his personality.

与其说是我喜欢他的长相，不如说我喜欢他的性格。

There is nothing in the world that I liked so much as music.

我爱好音乐胜过世上的一切。

The great use of a school education is not so much to teach you things as to teach you the art of learning .

学校的最大作用不在于教你知识，而在于教你学习的方法。

It wasn't so much that I dislike her as that I just wasn't interested in the whole business.

与其说我不喜欢他，倒不如说我是不喜欢这件事情。

根据上面的例句，我们看出，not so much. . . as 前后连接的两个结构是平行的，是名词前后都是名词，是不定式前后都是不定式，是从句前后都是从句。

2）just as. . . ，so 句型。

just as. . . , so 的意思是“正如……所以……”。just as 引导从句，so 引导主句，so 有时可以省略。例如：

Just as dark clouds cannot long hide the sun，so no lies can cover up the fact.

正如乌云不能遮蔽太阳，谎言也遮盖不了事实。

Just as Darwin discovered the law of development of nature，（so）Marx discovered the law of development of human history.

正如达尔文发现了自然发展规律一样，马克思发现了人类历史发展的规律。

3. 让步状语从句

常见连接词：although，though，even though，even if

特殊连接词：

1）while 句首，as 倒装结构

2）wh-ever：whatever，whoever，whichever，however

3）as + adj. + as + 主谓结构放句首

让步状语从句大家并不陌生，在 SAT 考试中经常出现由 although 或者 though 引导的让步状语从句。

Though Michael is a freshman in his college，he is quite popular.

Although the job is very hard，he enjoys his work.

在 SAT 真题中，还出现过另外一种形式的让步状语从句，例如：

An amateur potter herself，the accountant offered to help the artist with his business account，complicated as they were by his unusual system of record keeping. （OG Test 2 29）

这是一道 SAT 官方指南中的原题，第一眼看去，会对句子的结构产生疑惑。究其原因，就是对 as 让步状语从句倒装结构不了解。

as 引导的让步状语从句倒装的结构有：

形容词/副词/名词/动词 + as + 主词 + 谓语，主语 + 谓语

意思是“尽管……”，其中主词和主语可以不是同一个词。例如：

Rich as their country is，their living standard is by no means satisfactory. （形容词）

尽管他们的国家很富有，但他们的生活水平一点也不高。

Much as I love Michael Jackson，I cannot buy all his discs. （副词）

尽管我很爱迈克尔·杰克逊，我也没法买完他所有的唱片。

Child as he is，he is knowledgeable. （名词）

尽管还是个孩子，他懂得很多。

Fail as I did，I would never give up. （动词）尽管我失败了，但我绝不放弃。

知道了 as 的这种用法后，我们再来看 SAT 官方指南上的这道例题。这句话的主句是“the accountant offered to help the artist”。在主句之前，有一个“名词，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语（n.，S + V + O）”的结构，即“an amateur potter herself”，这里的名词是主语 accountant 的同位语。“complicated as they were”，就是我们所讲到的形容词 + as + 主词 + 谓语的结构，在这里是“尽管……”的意思。因此这句话的整体意思应该是“尽管由于这位艺术家不同常人的做账方式使得他的账目很复杂，作为业余陶艺爱好者的女会计仍然帮助他

做账。”

如果不了解这个句子的句型结构，这道语法题比较难解。由此我们也可以看出，SAT的语法对英语句子结构的把握是有较高要求的。

4. 地点状语从句

常见连接词：where

特殊连接词：wherever，anywhere，everywhere

地点状语从句的形式相对较为简单，其结构通常就是 where + 陈述句。例如：

Where there is a will，there is a way.

有志者，事竟成。

Slow down where there are kids playing around.

有小朋友玩的地方请减速。

Where others are weak，he is strong.

别人的弱点正是他的优势。

Where bees are，there is honey.

有蜂就有蜜。

5. 原因状语从句

常见连接词：because，as，for，since

特殊连接词：seeing that，considering that，now that，given that，in that

原因状语从句是从句和主句之间表现因果关系的，例如：

He can not go abroad because he has no money.

Seeing that it's windy outside，the kids are asked to stay at home.

Now that you are 18，you should be responsible to have a car.

Considering he's only just started，he knows quite a lot about it.

6. 目的状语从句

常见连接词：so that，in order that，that

特殊连接词：for fear that，in the hope that，on purpose that，for the purpose that，to the end that

常用的引导目的状语从句的连接词有：so that，in order that 或 that。例如：

I spoke loudly so that/in order that all the audience could hear me.

He climbed high（so）that he could get a better view.

The students studied very hard on purpose that they could pass the exam.

Let's take the front seats that we may see more clearly.

She simplified the instructions so that the old could understand them.

He told us to keep quiet for fear that we might disturb others.

7. 结果状语从句

常见连接词：so. . . that，so that，such. . . that

特殊连接词：such that，to the degree that，to the extent that，to such a degree that，to such an extent that

结果状语从句跟其他状语从句的区别在于，结果状语从句一般放在主句之后而不能放到句首。

同时需要注意，so. . . that，such. . . that 虽然看上去是两个部分，但是合起来算一个连接词。例如：

He was so angry that he cannot help shouting at me. （so + 形容词 + that）

It was such a cold night that we stayed at home.

We arrived early，so we got good seats.

8. 条件状语从句

常见连接词：if，unless

特殊连接词：suppose，supposing，providing，provided，on condition that，as long as，so long as

例如：

If weather permits，I will go shopping tomorrow.

Suppose you had a million pounds，how would you spend it.

She doesn't have any hobbies unless you call spending money a hobby.

You can go shopping，as long as you promise to be back before 18 o' clock.

9. 方式状语从句

常见连接词：as，the way

例如：

When in Rome，do as Romans do.

Do it the way you were taught.

As you know，I am not good at singing.

I did as he asked.

5.3 形容词性从句——定语从句

定语从句是英语中非常重要的一个语法现象。定语从句是在定语的位置上放了一句话，用于修饰名词。我们在讲从句时提到过，从句要包含“从”和“句”两个部分。“从”，就是要有表示从属关系的连接词；“句”，就是这个结构中要有动词。因此，定语从句需要关注的重点是先行词和关系词。先行词，是被定语从句所修饰的词，即名词。而关系词，就是引导定语从句的引导词。例如：

My father likes reading books which are about history.

例句中，定语从句 which are about history 修饰的名词 books 就是先行词。引导定语从句的 which 就是关系词。

关系词，在定语从句中分为关系代词和关系副词。两者在从句中的用法不同。定语从句中常见的关系代词有 that，用于指人或物；which，用于指物；who，whom，用于指人。关系副词有 where，指地点；when，指时间；why，指原因。

定语从句的关系词，是定语从句中学习的一个难点。我们通过对专有名词命名的理解可以将关系词的用法了解透彻。

1. 关系代词

关系代词即关系 + 代词，因此理解关系代词的用法时需要分两个部分。

（1）代词，在句中做主语、宾语或表语的主干成分。因此关系代词在定语从句中要做主语、宾语或表语的主干成分。

（2）关系，即关联、联系。因此关系代词有连接词的作用，用于连接两个句子，两个动词。

（3）关系代词，用于指代先行词。

例 5-4　Do you know the man that/who came to see Xiao Yang this morning?

主句是 do you know the man，定语从句是 that/who came to see Xiao Yang this morning。从句中的谓语是 came，句中缺主语成分，因此：

1）that/who 在从句中当主语。

2）that/who 相当于连接词，用于连接两个句子，两个动词，know 和 came。

3）that/who 指人——先行词 the man。

例 5-5　This is a book that/which tells about space rocket.

主句是 this is a book，定语从句是 that/which tells about space rocket.

1）从句中缺主语成分，that/which 在从句中做主语。

2）that/which 相当于连接词，用于连接前后两个句子，两个动词 is 和 tells。

3）that/which 指物——先行词 a book。

例 5-6　The comrade（that/who/whom）they came to visit is a scientist.

例 5-7　I will never forget the day（that/which）we spent in the countryside.

例 5-6 和例 5-7 同理，都是关系代词引导定语从句。而不同的是宾语从句中缺宾语成分，由此，关系代词在句中代宾语。需要注意的是，当关系代词在从句中充当宾语时，关系代词常常可以省略。

2. 关系副词

关系副词即关系 + 副词，因此关系副词的用法如下：

（1）副词，在句中做状语，状语在句中不属于主干成分，因此我们一般说关系副词在句中不做成分。

（2）关系，即关联、联系。因此关系副词有连接词作用，用于连接两个句子，两个动词。

（3）关系副词，用于指代先行词。

例 5-8　He was well at the time when I saw him.（指时间）

主句是 he was well at the time，定语从句是 when I saw him

1）定语从句中的主语是 I，动词是 saw，宾语是 him。从句中不缺成分，所以用关系副词 when 引导。

2）关系副词 when，是连接词，前后连接两个句子，两个动词，was 和 saw。

3）关系副词 when 指代时间先行词 time。

例 5-9　Let's meet at the place where we met yesterday.（指地点）

主句是 let's meet at the place，定语从句是 where we met yesterday.

1）定语从句中的主语是 we，谓语是 met。从句中不缺成分，所以用关系副词 where 引导。

2）关系副词 where，是连接词，前后连接两个句子，两个动词，let 和 met。

3）关系副词 where 指代地点先行词 place。

例 5-10　This is the reason why I am in favor of the singer.（指原因）

主句是 this is the reason，定语从句是 why I am in favor of the singer。

1）定语从句中的主语是 I，系动词是 am，表语是 in favor of the singer。从句中不缺成分，所以用关系副词 why 引导。

2）关系副词 why，是连接词，前后连接两个句子，两个动词，is 和 am。

3）关系副词 why 指代原因先行词 reason。

3. 在定语从句中，还有一类介词 + 关系代词的结构。

关系代词在定语从句中做介词的宾语时，介词可以位于关系代词之前，从而构成介词 + 关系代词引导的定语从句。只能用 whom，which；不能用 who，that。

例 5-11　This is the house in which he was born.

该句也可以写成 This is the house which he was born in. which 是做介词 in 的宾语，介词可以提前。

例 5-12　The person to whom you should write is Mr. Ball.

该句也可以写成 The person whom you should write to is Mr. Ball. whom 是做介词 to 的宾语，介词可以提前。

例 5-13　The man with whom you talked is our English teacher.

该句可以写成 The man whom you talked with is our English teacher. whom 是介词 with 的宾语，介词可以提前。

但是，需要注意的是，并不是所有的介词都可以提前。如果动词与后边的介词是一个统一整体，介词是不可以随意拆分到关系代词之前的。

例 5-14　This is the magazine which you are looking for.

例 5-14 中不可以将 for 移到 which 之前，变成 This is the magazine for which you are looking，因为，looking 和 looking for 的意思是完全不同的，将介词提前会引起句子的歧义。

4. 定语从句与同位语从句的区分

定语从句和同位语从句在分析时常常容易混淆，有两个原因：第一，定语从句和同位语从句的位置一般都在名语之后；第二，定语从句和同位语从句都常用 that 做引导词。但是，两种从句在用法和理解上是有很大不同的。

例 5-15　The news that he won the game pleased everybody.

The news that he reported pleased everybody.

这两个句子的主句都是 The news pleased everybody. 从句分别是 that he won the game 和 that he reported。这两个从句都是在名词之后，连接词都是 that。首先从结构上讲，that he won the game 中的 that 连接的是一个主语 + 谓语 + 宾语的完整句。That + 完整陈述句的结构是名词性从句的构成方法，因此这个句子从结构上看，应该是同位语从句。

that he reported 中的 that 连接的是一个主语 + 谓语，缺宾语成分，而宾语就是 that 所指代的 news，即 he reported the news，这是一个定语从句。that 是关系代词，所以在句中要做成分，句子里缺宾语，that 做从句的宾语成分。that 指代从句所修饰的先行词 the news。

从语义上讲，that he won the game 与 the news 的关系是“是”的关系，从句对 the news 的内容进行填充，是同位语从句。

that he reported 与 the news 的关系是“的”的关系，从句对 the news 进行修饰，是定语从句。

由此可见，同位语从句中 that 连接一个完整的句子，与被修饰的名词是内容填充的关系，两者是等同的，“是”的关系。定语从句中的 that 是关系代词，要加一个不完整句，与被修饰的名词是修饰关系，“的”的意思。

第 6 讲　非谓语动词

非谓语动词不是动词，在形式上是动词的变形，在句中不能充当谓语。非谓语动词结构分为三种形式，分别是 to do，doing 和 done。每一种形式有不同的词性特征，也因为相应的词性可以放在不同的成分上。这一讲，我们就统一梳理非谓语动词的用法。

本讲内容安排如下：

6.1　to do（不定式）

6.2　doing（动名词或现在分词）

6.3　done（过去分词）

很多学生会认为动词分为两类，分别是谓语动词和非谓语动词。但是从逻辑上讲，这种说法是不正确的。在本书第 1 讲中我们强调了谓语和动词是绝对等同的。因此，非谓语动词是非谓语、非动词的意思，而不能理解成“非谓语的动词”。

非谓语动词是英语学习中的一个难点。也是我们讲到的句子成分的三大层级中的第三层级。为了能够从本质上搞清非谓语动词的本质，我们从它的命名入手，来找寻线索。非谓语动词，即不是谓语，也不是动词。由于不是动词，在句中就不可以充当谓语成分。学习中最大的误区就是容易把非谓语动词和谓语动词搞混。非谓语动词是动词的变形，在表现上有三种形式，分别为 to do，doing 和 done。其中 doing 是一对双胞胎，既是动名词的 doing，又是现在分词的 doing。两者长相一致，但是性质完全不同。

6.1　to do（不定式）

to do 叫不定式，能充当多种成分。它可以当做名词、形容词或副词来使用。因此，从第一层级（词）推知，当 to do 相当于名词的时候，可以充当句子中的主语、宾语或表语成分。当 to do 相当于形容词时，在句中可以充当定语、表语或补语成分。当 to do 相当于副词时，在句中可以充当状语成分。

例如：

To see is to believe.（to do 充当主语和表语）

I want to learn English. （to do 充当宾语）

I want you to learn English. （to do 充当宾语补足语）

He gives me the book to read. （to do 充当定语）

To buy a computer，I have to save up. （to do 充当状语）

6.2 doing（动名词或现在分词）

doing 是由动词变形过来，在动词后面加- ing。doing 既可以是动名词，又可以是现在分词。

doing 是动名词时，相当于名词，因此在句中可以充当由名词充当的成分，即，主语、宾语或表语。同时因为定语可以由名词充当，所以动名词也可以当定语。

doing 是现在分词时，相当于形容词或副词，因此在句中充当由形容词或副词充当的成分。当 doing 是现在分词当形容词时，在句中做定语或补语。当 doing 是现在分词当副词时，在句中做状语。现在分词表主动、表进行。

下面我们分别来看动名词和现在分词的例句：

动名词：

Taking exercise every morning helps make one healthy. （动名词做主语）

I like reading. （动名词做宾语）

His job is teaching English. （动名词做表语）

Jack always studies in the reading room. （动名词做定语）

现在分词：

The film is moving. （现在分词做表语）

I don't know the quarrelling couple. （现在分词做定语）

Knowing that she was an experienced worker，they often asked her for help. （现在分词做状语）

I saw them playing on the playground at six o'clock. （现在分词做宾语补足语）

我们看出，动名词和现在分词的 doing 都可以做表语和定语，那么如何区分呢？

我们先来分析表语的区分方法。

例 6-1　看下边两个句子：

His job is teaching English.

The film is moving.

doing 是动名词做表语的时候，相当于名词，是现在分词做定语的时候，相当于形容词。因此，我们的区分方法可以用副词来检验。在相应的 doing 前面加上 very，看结构是否可以说通，如果说得通，说明可以修饰，是形容词性的，那么这个 doing 就是现在分词。如果说不通，说明不能修饰，是名词性的，那么这个 doing 就是动名词。

我们不能说 very teaching English，说明 teaching 是名词性质的，所以是动名词。可以说 very moving，说明 moving 是形容词性的，所以是现在分词。

接下来，来分析定语的区分方法。

例 6-2　看下边两个句子：

Jack always studies in the reading room.

I don't know the quarrelling couple.

doing 是动名词做定语时，与被修饰词的关系是“be used for doing sth.”表示被用来做某事。doing 是现在分词做定语时，和被修饰词有逻辑主谓关系。

the reading room，表示 the room is used for reading，所以是动名词。翻译为“被用作读书的房间”，即大家熟知的阅览室。the quarrelling couple，quarrelling 与所修饰的 couple 之间有逻辑主谓关系，即 couple 发出了 quarrelling 的动作，所以是现在分词，翻译为“争吵的夫妻”。

6.3　done（过去分词）

过去分词与现在分词同属分词，都是形容词或副词性质，因此在句中做表语、定语、状语或补语的成分，过去分词与被修饰词表被动，表完成。例如：

He looked very excited.（过去分词做表语）

The town seen from the hill is my hometown.（过去分词做定语）

He went to the house，followed by some children.（过去分词做状语）

I saw the thief caught by the police.（过去分词做补语）

最后，我们来进行一下非谓语在句中充当句子成分的总结，见表 6-1。

表 6-1　非谓语在句中充当的成分

	主语	宾语	表语	定语	状语	补语
to do 不定式	●	●	●	●	●	●
doing 动名词	●	●	●	●		
doing 现在分词			●	●	●	●
done 过去分词			●	●	●	●

到这一讲，句子结构的三大层级就讲解完毕了，接下来我们将句子成分的三大层级进行一个统一整理，见表 6-2 和 6-3。

表 6-2　主谓宾结构的三大层级

	状语	定语	主　　语	谓	宾　　语
第一层级：词	adv. 介宾	adj. n. 介宾	n.，pron.	v.	n.，pron.
第二层级：句	九大状从	关代 + 不完整句（who，whom，which，that）	that + 陈述句		（that）+ 陈述句
		关副 + 完整句（when，where，why）	whether + 一般疑问句正装		whether/if + 一般疑问句正装
			wh - + 特殊疑问句正装		wh - + 特殊疑问句正装
第三层级：非谓词	to do	to do	to do		to do
	doing（现在分词）	doing（动名词）	doing（动名词）		doing（动名词）
	done（过去分词）	doing（现在分词）			
		done（过去分词）			

表 6-3　主系表结构的三大层级

	主　　语	系　动　词	表　　语
第一层级	n. ，pron.	be 动词 感官动词 smell taste feel look turn get become seem	n. ，pron. ，adj. ，prep. 短语
第二层级	that + 陈述句		that + 陈述句
	whether + 一般疑问句正装		whether + 一般疑问句正装
	wh - + 特殊疑问句正装		wh- + 特殊疑问句正装
第三层级	to do		to do
	doing（动名词）		doing（动名词）
			doing（现在分词）
			done（过去分词）

第 7 讲　黄金语法四原则

在前面几讲对句子结构需要遵循的原则和句子成分上的三大层级进行梳理的基础上，这一讲将从另一个角度来透析英语的句子结构——黄金语法四原则。这四个原则主要关注在相应的位置上，都可以放置哪些结构。

本讲内容安排如下：

7.1　黄金语法原则一：修饰名词 6 + 1

7.2　黄金语法原则二：6 种插入结构

7.3　黄金语法原则三：主语之前的两种情况

7.4　黄金语法原则四：句子之后的一种情况

梳理了最基本的句子成分的三大层级后，我们从另一个角度将句子结构进行梳理——黄金语法四原则。黄金语法四原则主要关注在相应的位置上，分别可以放哪些结构。

7.1　黄金语法原则一：修饰名词 6 + 1

名词（N）　⑥ + ①　+ 动词（V）（⑥代表 6 种定语情况，①代表一种同位语情况）

名词可以由哪些结构来修饰呢？首先是定语。定语是修饰名词的最主要成分。定语可放名词前，也可以放名词后。一般而言短前长后，即，短结构放前，长结构放后。除了定语之外，能够和名词产生关系的还有用于补充说明的同位语。

修饰名词⑥ + ①，见表 7-1。

表 7-1　修饰名词⑥ + ①

名词前		名词后	
形容词（定语）	名词 +	①形容词短语	定语
		②介宾短语	
		③定语从句	
名词（定语/同位语）		④to do	
		⑤doing 表进行，表主动	
		⑥done 表完成，表被动	
		①同位语从句	同位语

例如：

1）I have an interesting book.（形容词 + 名词）

2）This book store is my favor.（名词 + 名词）

3）An sportsman himself，Jack knows how important hardworking is.（同位语，名词）

4）He is a man rude but henpecked.（名词 + 形容词短语）

5）The room in that building is my class.（名词 + 介宾短语）

6）He who attended the meeting is our boss.（名词 + 定语从句）

7）I want to find a place to go.（名词 + to do 不定式）

8）The woman coming from Paris knows what fashion is.（名词 + doing）

9）The pen bought by him is my precious gift.（名词 + done）

10）The question whether he will come to my party is not important to me.（名词 + 同位语从句）

7.2　黄金语法原则二：6 种插入结构

主语（S），　⑥　，谓语（V）

在较为复杂的句子结构中，我们常常可以看到两个逗号隔开的部分。一般而言，两个逗号中间的部分可以单独分析。放在这两个逗号中间的成分及形式较为多样，可归为 5 种插入结构，见表 7-2。

表 7-2　6 种插入结构

主语	,	⑥	,	谓语
		1. 同位语		
		2. 介宾短语（状语居中）		
		3. 非限制性定语从句		
		4. 非谓语（非限制性定语从句的省略） 1）to do 2）doing 3）done		
		5. 插入语，如 if done		
		6. 简短主谓，如 I maintain，I think，I believe		

例如：

1）The assumption，that the boy is the thief，has been proved.（同位语）

2）Michael Jackson，a famous popstar，was born in 1958.（名词短语）

3）We decided，in view of his special circumstances，that we would admit him for a probationary period.（状语居中）

4）The drivers，who know the serious accident，choose the other road.（非限制性定语从句）

5）The novel，to be written，is about the war and love.（to do）

6）The book，recording the events happened in the past，is often called history book.（doing）

7）Peter's seemingly effortless flights，achieved through the use of sophisticated technical equipment，continue to delight those who see the play Peter Pan.（done）

8）The doctor repeated her point that the hero，if given the chance to relieve the moment，would choose to go abroad.（if done）

9）Nothing can be compared，he maintains with the first cockcrow.（简短主谓）

7.3 黄金语法原则三：主语之前的两种情况

②_____，主语 + 谓语（S + V）

一句话逗号之前的句子成分在英语中一般有两种情况，一种是状语成分，另一种就是同位语成分。而状语成分的情况是占大多数的。具体情况，见表 7-3 。

表 7-3　主语之前的结构

②		
1. 状语 1）副词 2）介词 3）to do 4）doing 5）done 6）状语从句 7）独立主格	，	主语 + 谓语
2. 同位语		

例如：

1）Finally，we agreed with each other.（副词）

2）From East to West，Germany abounds with lakes，rivers and canals.（介词）

3）To reduce pollution in the Great Lakes，the United States and Canada set limits on the amount of phosphorus that could be discharged into Lakes Erie and Ontario.（to do）

4）Travelling through Yosemite，we photographed the scenery of waterfalls and granite

peaks. （doing）

5）Carried by the strong, dry winds of the stratosphere, dust from the 1980 eruption of Mount Saint Helens crossed the United States in three days and circled the globe in two weeks. （done）

6）On the purpose that the students in the back could hear me, I raised my voice. （状语从句）

7）The meeting over, all of us went home. （独立主格）

8）An amateur potter herself, the accountant offered to help the artist with his business account. （同位语）

7.4　黄金语法原则四：句子之后的一种情况

（主语＋谓语）（S＋V）　①

我们在讲到句子成分时说过，在一句话中，状语的位置是最为灵活的，它可以放句首、放句中或放句尾。我们在黄金语法原则二和黄金语法原则三中分别看到了状语居中和状语放句首的情况。接下来，我们来看状语放句末的情况，见表7-4。

表7-4　句子之后的状语情况

		①
主语＋谓语	,	状语 1. 副词 2. 介词 3. to do 4. doing 5. done 6. 状语从句 7. 独立主格

例如：

1）The man shouted at the woman, angrily. （副词）

2）The rude parents quarreled with the teacher, without any good reason. （介词）

3）He worked very hard, only to find he had not finished half of the job. （to do）

4）During my most recent trip, I came across a wonderful antique store, wandering in the old quarter of the city. （doing）

5）He set off down the main street of the city, dressed up as Father Christmas. （done）

6）The doorbell rang when I was sleeping. （状语从句）

7）A car roared past, with smoke pouring from the exhaust. （独立主格）

第 8 讲　句子结构分析四步骤

在前面七讲对句子结构进行梳理后，这一讲我们来关注如何划分句子结构。需要注意的是，分析句子结构不可以凭空想象，而需要遵循一定的思路。这一讲的主要内容是为考生讲解分析句子的四个步骤，同时用例句来进行实战演练。这一讲给出的句子并不复杂，但是我们需要用简单的句子来固定语法结构的分析思路，将此思路固定后，可以运用于分析各种复杂的句子结构。

英语中的长难句是句子理解的一个难点。学会分析句型结构也是 SAT 语法考试的基本功。通过对句型结构的讲解，从这一讲起，我们开始梳理句型分析的思路。句型分析不可以跟着感觉走，要在熟知句子脉络结构的前提下，按步骤一步步进行。句型结构分析的 4 个步骤分别是：

步骤 1：找动词。

步骤 2：看结构。

步骤 3：对词性。

步骤 4：看意思。

在本书第 1 讲，我们提到最重要的一句话，即一句话里有且只有一个谓语动词。也由此可知谓语动词是英语句子中最为主要的成分。一句话，之所以能称做是句子，重要的规则是句子里面有动词，句子和动词是一一对应的关系。因此，动词是定位句子最好的指向标。所以，在分析句子结构的时候，要首先定位动词。

将动词定位后，由动词的情况来确定这个句子大致是什么结构，比如，是主谓宾还是主系表等。

对句子结构有了大致把握后，要进行句型分析最为重要的一步，即对词性。根据谓语定位其他成分，动词前为主语，动词后为宾语，系动词前为主语，系动词后为表语。将成分定位后，对每个成分的词性进行对应，看是否与每个成分上允许的词性对应，如果对应，说明分析正确或句子正确，如果不能对应，说明分析错误或句子错误。

一般而言，到第三步句子结构就基本清晰了。对于更难的句子，我们在分析时还需要进行第四步，即看意思。每个相应的成分都可以独立表意，即意思是相对完整的。

下面我们根据句法分析的四个步骤，对由简到难的 8 个例句，逐一进行分析。

例 8-1　I am a teacher.

步骤 1：找动词。本句动词是 am。

步骤 2：看结构。动词是系动词，因此这句话最可能的结构是主 + 系 + 表。

步骤 3：对词性。句子是主系表的结构时，系动词前是主语，主语是名词或代词性质。

即 am 之前，主语是 I，I 是代词，符合主语词性，因此可以做主语。系动词后是表语，表语是名词、代词、形容词或介词。即 am 之后，表语是 a teacher，teacher 是名词，符合表语部分的词性，因此可以做表语。

由以上分析可以判定，句子的结构是主系表，主语 I，系动词 am，表语 a teacher。句中只有一个动词，是一个简单句。

例 8-2　Whoever comes is welcome.

步骤 1：找动词。本句找到两个动词，分别是 comes 和 is。根据一句话里有且只有一个谓语动词，推出有 n 个动词就有 n 句话，需要 $n-1$ 个连接词。因此，这一个句点的结构里是有两个句子的，有一个连接词 whoever。

步骤 2：看结构。在以 comes 为谓语动词的句子里，结构是主 + 谓。在以 is 为谓语动词的句子里，结构是主 + 系 + 表。

步骤 3：对词性。在一个句点的结构里，如果看到两个或两个以上的动词，说明不是一个简单句，因此句子结构的分析相对复杂。词性对应在这种情况下就是最为重要的一步。我们要通过对应词性来确定句点内的几个动词，到底哪个是主句的谓语动词，哪个是从句的谓语动词。

（1）假设 comes 是主句的谓语动词，则句子为主谓结构，comes 之前是主语，comes 之后是状语。即 comes 之前，主语是 whoever，whoever 是代词，符合主语要求的词性，因此可以做主语。comes 之后是 is welcome，这个结构中出现了动词，不符合状语要求的词性。由此推出，分析错误，comes 不是主句的谓语动词。

（2）假设 is 是主句的谓语动词，则句子为主系表结构。is 之前是主语，is 之后是表语。即 is 之前，whoever comes 做主语，是一个主语从句。whoever 是引导词，comes 是动词，符合主语从句的要求。is 之后的 welcome 具有形容词性，做表语。

通过对应词性分析出句子是主系表的结构，其中主语部分是一个由 whoever 引导的主语从句。

例 8-3　It is strange that he had made a mistake.

步骤 1：找动词。本句中有两个动词，分别为 is 和 had made。由此说明在一个句点的结构中有两个句子，有一个用于连接两个动词的连接词 that。

步骤 2：看结构。由系动词 is 构成的句子，结构是主系表；由 had made 构成的句子，结构是主谓宾。

步骤 3：对词性。

（1）假设 is 是主句的谓语动词，则 is 前全为主语，is 后全为表语。is 前是形式主语 it，it 代指真正的主语——由 that 引导的从句 that he had made a mistake。is 后是形容词 strange，可以做表语。因此这句话的结构是主系表，is 是主句的谓语动词。

（2）had made 是从句中的谓语动词，主语是代词 he，宾语是名词 a mistake，是主谓宾的结构。从句由引导词 that 连接到主句中。

例 8-4　We decided，in view of his special circumstances，that we would admit him for a probationary period.

步骤 1：找动词。句点内有两个动词，分别是 decided 和 would admit，有一个用于连接句子的 that。

步骤 2：看结构。由谓语动词 decided 构成的句子，结构是主谓宾；由谓语动词 would

admit 构成的句子，结构是主谓宾。

步骤 3：对词性。

（1）假设 decided 是主句的谓语动词，则 decided 前面全为主语，后面全为宾语。在 decided前是代词 we，可以做主语。在 decided 后是 in view of his special circumstances 是插入语，可以不看。that we would admit him for a probationary period 是 decided 的宾语从句，由 that 做引导词。因此主句是主谓宾的结构，decided 是主句的谓语动词

（2）would admit 是从句中的谓语动词。主语是代词 we，宾语是代词 him。从句的引导词是 that。

例 8-5　He was deeply displeased by what had occurred that day.

步骤 1：找动词。句点内有两个动词，was displeased 和 had occurred，有一个用于连接二个句子的 wthat。

步骤 2：看结构。由 was displeased 做谓语构成的句子，结构是主谓；由 had occurred 做谓语构成的句子，结构是主谓宾。

步骤 3：对词性。

（1）假设 was displeased 是主句的谓语动词，则动词前全是主语，动词后没有宾语。was displeased 前是代词 he，可以做主语。was displeased 后是 by 引导的介宾结构做状语，不是宾语。因此主句是主谓结构。was displeased 是主句谓语动词。

（2）had occurred 是从句中的谓语动词。主语是代词 what，宾语是名词 that day。从句是介词 by 的宾语从句，由 what 引导。

例 8-6　The problem is who we can get to replace her.

步骤 1：找动词。句点内有两个动词，is 和 can get，有一个用于连接二个句子的 who。

步骤 2：看结构。由 is 做系动词构成的句子，结构是主系表；由 can get 做谓语构成的句子，结构是主谓宾。

步骤 3：对词性。

（1）假设 is 是主句的系动词，则 is 前全是主语，is 后是表语。句中，is 前是名词 the problem，is 后是由 who 引导的一个句子，做表语。因此主句的动词是 is，主句是主系表的结构。

（2）can get 是从句中的谓语动词。can get 前是代词 we，用来做主语。can get 后是疑问代词 who 做宾语。从句的引导词是 who，而引导词一定放从句句首，因此这里的 who 放在了从句的首位，但是在从句中仍然是做句子的宾语。从句是一个主谓宾的结构。

例 8-7　I think the right age for marriage is the 40s，when both mind and body are mature enough to make decisions.

步骤 1：找动词。句点内有三个动词，think，is 和 are。

步骤 2：看结构。由 think 做动词的句子，结构是主谓宾；由 is 做动词的句子，结构是主系表；由 are 做动词的句子，结构是主系表。

步骤 3：对词性。

（1）假设 think 是主句的谓语，则 think 前全是主语，think 后全是宾语。句中，think 前是代词 I，可以做主语。think 后 when 前的部分是一个完整成分。因为 when 是连接词，when 后是另一个句子开始的标志。the right age for marriage is the 40s 是一个完整成分。里

面有一个动词，因为跟在动词 think 后，所以是宾语的位置。宾语从句的引导词 that 在不影响句子理解的情况下可以省略。因此，主句就是 I think the right age for marriage is the 40s，主 + 谓 + 省略了 that 的宾语从句。

（2）is 是宾语从句中的系动词，主语是 the right age，系动词是 is，表语是 the 40s。

（3）are 是 when 引导的定语从句的系动词，主语是名词短语 both mind and body，表语是形容词 mature。因为 when 后的一整句是用于修饰名词 the 40s 的，因此是定语从句。

例 8-8　Travelling abroad can be very exciting.

步骤 1：找动词。句中的动词是 can be。需要注意的是 travelling 是动词变形的动名词 doing，不是谓语动词。

步骤 2：看结构。动词是 can be，所以是主系表的结构。

步骤 3：对词性。动词 can be 前全是主语，主语的位置是 travelling abroad，是名词性的，因此可以做主语。动词 can be 后全是表语，表语的位置是 exciting，是形容词性，因此可以做表语。由此可见，这个句子是主系表的结构，主语的位置是一个动名词做主语。

第 9 讲　英语中常见的语法现象

英语中有一些常见的语法现象在 SAT 中也有所考查。这一讲我们对倒装和虚拟语气进行讲解。

倒装，即动词或者助动词放在主语之前的语法现象。这一讲会对完全倒装和部分倒装进行讲解。

虚拟语气，在考生初学的时候往往会被其复杂的不同形式的谓语动词弄得晕头转向。这一讲，考生需要牢固记忆虚拟语气的各种表达。

本讲内容安排如下：

9.1　倒装

9.2　虚拟语气

除了了解基本的句子结构外，英语中还有一些特有的语法现象，如果对这些语法现象不了解，也会造成句子理解不畅。

我们要讲的第一个语法现象是倒装。

9.1　倒装

在英语中，常见的句子结构是主谓宾，主系表等。将这些句型结构倒装，是英语中常见的一种语法结构。与正装相对应，倒装是将动词作了前置处理。完全倒装就是将动词完全放在主语之前，部分倒装就是将助动词、系动词等部分提前。

英语中正常语序是主语 + 谓语，而在一些特定的语言环境下，为了对某一成分进行强调，而形成了主语和谓语对调的结构，这一结构就叫做倒装。倒装分为两种形式：第一种是完全倒装，是指谓语完全放在主语之前的结构，即谓语 + 主语；第二种是部分倒装，是指谓语的一部分放在主语之前，即助动词/情态动词 + 主语 + 谓语。

1. 完全倒装

表示方式或方位的副词或者介词短语放句首，句子要使用完全倒装。如，up，down，away，in，out，next，in the room，here，there 等。例如：

In a lecture hall of a university in England sits a professor. 英格兰一所大学的讲堂里坐着一位教授。

Out rushed the children. 孩子们冲了出去。

Away flew the plane. 飞机飞走了。

In came my father. 我爸爸走了进来。

Down came the rain. 下雨了。

Among these people is his teacher. 他的老师就在这群人中间。

Next to natural resources comes the ability to turn them to use. 发现自然资源的下一步就是利用它们。

Here comes the bus. 公共汽车来了。

There goes the bell. 铃响了。

需要注意的是，对这类完全倒装，如果主语是人称代词，句子是不可以进行倒装的。请看例句，

Here it comes. 而不能说成 Here comes it.

Away he went. 而不能说成 Away went he.

2. 部分倒装

（1）否定副词放句首，句子用部分倒装。如，never，nor，not，hardly，little，seldom。部分倒装时，句子的助动词提到主语之前，谓语部分变成原型。例如：

Not a single mistake did he make.

Hardly do I think it possible to finish the job before dark.

（2）only 的倒装情况。only 的倒装情况较为特殊，我们先来看几个例句：

例 9-1　Only you can help me.

例 9-2　Only in this way can we win the game.

例 9-3　Only when he comes back，will we begin our meeting.

由例 9-1 与例 9-2、例 9-3 对比后可以看出，only 后加的是一个名词或者代词的时候，only 放句首是不产生倒装的。Only 后加介宾结构或者直接连接状语从句的时候，only 放句首产生部分倒装。

由例 9-2 和例 9-3 做对比，可以看出，only 的倒装是主句倒装“will we begin”，而不是从句倒装“when he comes back”。

3. 六个重要倒装固定句型

（1）...；so be/ have/ 助动词/ 情态动词 + 主语，“……也是如此”。例如：

They love having lots of friends; so do those with disabilities.

注意：如果句子意思不是“……也是如此”，而仅仅是对前面内容的肯定或附和，那么句子不可使用倒装式，例如：

It is hot.

So it is. （的确如此）

（2）...；neither（或 nor）be/ have/ 助动词/ 情态动词 + 主语，“……也不这样”。例如：

Lily can't ride; neither can Lucy.

（3）Neither...，nor...“……不……，……也不……”，前后均需倒装。

（4）Not only...，but also...“不仅……而且……”。例如：

Not only will help be given to people to find jobs, but also medical treatment will be provided for people who need it.

（5）Not until...“直到……才……”（主句倒装）。例如：

Not until he returned did we have supper.

Not until 10：00 in the morning can he fall asleep. = He can't fall asleep until 10：00 in the morning.

（6）So adj/adv... that...“如此……以至于……”。例如：

So clearly does he speak English that he can always make himself understood.

9.2　虚拟语气

虚拟语气，是中国学生比较难掌握的一种语法现象。主要原因在于，汉语中没有这种表达方式，因此在学习时会有一定的难度。我们需要从虚拟语气这一专有名词的命名中，找到虚拟语气的使用线索。“虚”，就是假的意思。能称为假的，就是和现在或者过去已经发生过的事情相反。“拟”，就是想象出的意思。想象出的事情，就是指未来发生的可能性很小。因此，当我们需要表达这种语气的时候，选择使用虚拟语气的表达方式。

英语是重结构的语言，对于虚拟语气有专门的表达方式。学习虚拟语气除了了解这种语气的使用情况外，还需要掌握用怎样的结构对这一语气进行正确表达。

英语中的语气有三种，分别为陈述语气、祈使语气和虚拟语气。虚拟，就是虚假，想象的意思。因此虚拟语气就是表现与实际情况相反，主观认为某件事发生的可能性很小，或者建议要求某件事发生。

由于虚拟语气的表达需求，在表现上，虚拟语气也主要分为两大类：if 条件状语从句的虚拟和名词性从句的虚拟。表现与事实相反或假想的情形，通常由 if 引导；名词性从句的虚拟用于表示建议，命令。

1. if 条件状语从句的虚拟

（1）if 条件句虚拟的语法表现。if 条件状语从句的虚拟有对过去、现在和将来三种时

间的虚拟，见表 9-1。

表 9-1　条件状语从句的虚拟

	虚拟条件句	主　　句
过去	had + 过去分词	would，could，might，should + have + 过去分词
现在	动词过去式/were	would，could，might，should ＋动词原型
将来	动词过去式 were to do should + 动词原型	would，could，might，should ＋动词原型

学习 if 条件句的虚拟语气的重点在分清并熟记三种不同时间的主句和从句谓语动词的变化。

1）对过去的虚拟。例如：

If you had taken my advice，you would not have failed in the exams.

2）对现在的虚拟。例如：

If I were you，I would seize the chance to go abroad.

If I had time，I would attend the meeting.

3）对将来的虚拟。例如：

If you came tomorrow，we would have the meeting.

If it were to rain tomorrow，the sports meeting would be put off.

If he should not come tomorrow，we should put off the meeting till next Monday.

（2）if 条件句的倒装。If 条件句在虚拟语气中有自身的倒装形式，倒装的变形方式是当从句中出现了 should，had，were 时，将这些词提前，if 省略形成倒装。

1）对过去的虚拟。例如：

If you had taken my advice，you would not have failed in the exams.

→Had you taken my advice，you would not have failed in the exams.

2）对现在的虚拟。例如：

If I were you，I would seize the chance to go abroad.

→Were I you，I would seize the chance to go abroad.

If I had time，I would attend the meeting.

→无倒装形式。从句中的 had 不是要求的 had done 中的 had。

3）对将来的虚拟。例如：

If you came tomorrow，we would have the meeting.

→无倒装形式。

If it were to rain tomorrow，the sports meeting would be put off.

→Were it to rain tomorrow，the sports meeting would be put off.

If he should not come tomorrow，we should put off the meeting till next Monday.

→Should he not come tomorrow，we should put off the meeting till next Monday.

需要注意的是，如果省略的条件句中谓语动词是否定形式，不能用动词缩略形式。

例如：

Were it not for the expense，I would go abroad now.（对）

Weren't it for the expense，I would go abroad now.（错）

（3）if 条件句的时态交叉。在实际表达时，if 条件句的虚拟语气的时态在主句和从句上不一定是成套出现的。比如，不需要主句过去时，从句就一定是过去时。根据表达的需求，主句和从句的虚拟可以是任何时间的，只要保证相应时间的语法及语义逻辑表达正确。

1）主句现在时 + 从句过去时。例如：

If you had followed my advice just now，you would be better now.

If you had studied hard before，you would be a college student now.

2）主句将来时 + 从句过去时。例如：

If you had studied hard before，you would graduate from a college in four years.

因此，在学习虚拟语气时，一定要将 if 条件句的主句从句对三种时态的表达牢记后，活学活用。

2. 名词性从句的虚拟

当名词性从句中有表示愿望、建议、命令、请求或意志等语气的标志词时，从句需要使用虚拟。虚拟的形式为 should + 动词原形，should 可以省略。

（1）宾语从句。由 ask，advise，beg，command，demand，decide，deserve，determine，insist，move，order，prefer，propose，require，request，suggest 等词汇做动词引导的宾语从句用虚拟语气。例如：

I suggest that he should go now.

His father urged that he（should）study harder.

He suggested that we（should）start off early the next day.

The doctor ordered that the patient（should）be sent to hospital without delay.

They insisted that the boy（should）go with them.

（2）同位语从句。上述动词的名词形式的同位语从句。例如：

The motion that the meeting be adjourned was adopted.

The suggestion that the customer obey the rules was not accepted by most of the companies.

We all agreed to his suggestion that we should go to Dalian for sight-seeing.

（3）主语从句。在表现个人对事件的反应的形容词形成的主语从句里（如 amazing，advisable，appropriate，essential，important，imperative，keen，normal，urgent，unusual），主语从句使用虚拟语气。It is desired/ suggested/proposed/necessary/important/strange/natural that +（should）+ 动词原型。例如：

1）It is strange that he should not win.（他竟然没赢，太奇怪了。）

2）It is important that the customer should obey the rule.

注意：当 suggest 表示“暗示、表明”时，不用虚拟语气，用陈述语气。例如：

The smile on his face suggested that he was satisfied with our work.

当 insist 表示“坚持、认为”时，不用虚拟语气，用陈述语气。例如：

The man insisted that he had never stolen the money.

3. 其他类型的虚拟语气

（1）在 as if/as though 引导的从句中。在 as if/as though 引导的从句中，虚拟语气的表达方式和 if 条件句的虚拟大致相同，见表 9-2。

表 9-2　as if/as though 的虚拟

时　　间	as if/as though
过去（与过去事实相反）	had done
现在（与现在事实相反或对现在情况有所怀疑）	did

例如：

It seems as though he had made the mistake before.（过去）

She speaks English so fluently as if she had studied English in America.（过去）

He looks as if he were an artist.（现在）

I don't like the way you talked to me. It seems as if you were the God.（现在）

Even if he were here, he could not solve the problem.（现在）

（2）在 wish 引导的从句中。wish 的虚拟语气在运用时有三种时态变化，分别是过去、现在和将来。用于表现说话人难以实现，或与事实相反的愿望。

wish 虚拟语气的表现形式，见表 9-3。

表 9-3　wish 的虚拟语气

时　　间	wish
过去（与过去发生的事情的遗憾或后悔）	had done would/could + 现在完成时
现在（对现在发生事情的愿望）	did
将来（对将来要发生的事情的祝愿）	would/could + 动词原型

1）对过去的虚拟。例如：

I wish I had recorded our conversation. 我真希望我对谈话进行了录音。

I wish I could have gone with you last weekend. 我真希望上周末我和你一起走了。

2）对现在的虚拟。例如：

I wish I were you.

I wish I could travel aboard.

I wish I knew him.

3）对将来的虚拟。例如：

I wish he could explain what his aim is.

I wish he could shut up and go away.

二、考点篇

SAT 语法的考试思路就是基于文章修改式的语法考试，对句子结构，句子逻辑脉络都有所考核。从句子挑错，到改进句子，再到篇章改进，都是对这一出题思路的层层递进。

本篇的内容共分 14 讲，第 10 讲到第 22 讲以长画线（IS）和短画线（ISE）的语法考点为讲解对象，每一讲对应一个考点。这些考点在 SAT 语法中较为固定，但某些考点在长短画线的不同题型各有侧重，比如代词考点和动词考点等。在每一讲之前，都有一个相应的测试，考生可以先自测，再进入考点学习，以加深对考点的理解。最后一讲讲解改进文章的相应考点。

第 10 讲　自　杀　词

自杀词是 SAT 语法里一个很好用的技巧。一般的用法是，见到有自杀词出现的选项，直接排除。因此，自杀词可以极大地帮助我们提高解题速度，锁定正确选项。在 SAT 语法中，有三个常见的自杀词，分别是 being，having 和 this。在使用自杀词这个技巧时，需要注意两点：第一，自杀词的技巧只能在长画线（IS）题中使用，短画线（ISE）题中是不可以使用的；第二，细节决定成败，考生要了解自杀词自杀与不自杀的情况。

这一讲，就为大家进行自杀词的整体梳理。具体内容安排如下：

10.1　自杀词 being

10.2　自杀词 having

10.3　自杀词 this

10.1 自杀词 being

being 是个自杀词。在 SAT 语法中见到 being 的选项基本不选。在 SAT 中，being 会在以下几种情况下出现：

（1）being + 形容词，例如：being beautiful。

（2）being + 名词，例如：being a boy。

（3）being + done。

（4）being that。

（5）plus being。

其中，being that 在长画线中出现时，在选项中找 because 的选项一般就是正确答案。另，plus being 是所有自杀词中唯一一个可以在短画线中使用的自杀词。

但是在以下两种情况下，being 是正确可选的：

（1）of being done。

（2）being... than being... 在平行结构中，前面有 being，后面自然可以用 being。

10.2 自杀词 having

having 自杀，但在以下两种情况下不自杀：

（1）Having 首字母大写放句首，不自杀；

（2）在主语 + have never done，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语的句型中，never having 的选项就是正确答案。

例 10-1

We had never seen anything like this style of architecture before, we thought we were looking at giant sculptures, not buildings. （09.05）

A. We had never seen

B. We never was

C. Never had we seen

D. Never having seen

E. Never seeing

根据句法结构分析，题干信息是 run-on 句型主语 + have never done，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语句中的动词多余，所以，要将多余的动词除去，因此 A，B，C 都不对，只剩 D，E。E 时态有误，因此选 D。这种题目套路性很强，我们可以直接按照方法做题——Never having 的选项就是正确答案。

例 10-2

I had never encountered such arrogance before, I did not know how to react. （10.10）

A. I had never encountered

B. I never encountered

C. Never had I encountered

D. Never having encountered

E. Never did I encounter

根据上述原则，一眼可看出正确答案是 D，此时的 having 不自杀。

10.3 自杀词 this

虽然在口语中对 this 的使用非常频繁，但是 SAT 语法中对这类代词的使用比较严格。当 this 做代词单独在句中做成分的时候，算为错误选项。比如，为大家举一个极端例句：

This is a house where I was born.

这里的 this，如果在 SAT 语法中出现，一般作为错误选项。因为，这个 this 单独在句中做了主语成分，造成指代不清。在 SAT 语法中常出现的这类错误表达有 because of this，in this 等，其中的 this 均使用错误。

而 this 也有正确的情况。this 正确的情况有以下两种：

（1）this ＋名词。例如 this development，this phenomena 等。在这种情况下，this 相当于定冠词 the，已经不是单独用做一个成分的代词了，不存在指代不清楚的问题，所以正确。

（2）this far。在这种情况下，this 是一个副词，用来修饰 far 这个形容词，因此也不属于单独做成分的代词，所以也是正确的。

第 11 讲 代 词

代词，是 SAT 语法中的一个重点，属于历年真题的必考考点。代词的考点共有六点，其中指代不清和 which 的考点在长画线（IS）和短画线（ISE）中是各有侧重的，在学习的时候需要区分不同题型的不同思路。常考的代词有 it，they，them，their，he or she，his or her，one，you，we 等。代词的考点，除代词单复数部分需要将代词带入上下文，找到所指的名词，进行单复数分析外，其他几个考点都用抓结构、对考点的方法做题即可。

本讲内容安排如下：

11.1 格

11.2 代词单复数

11.3 指代不清

11.4 which 的正确使用

11.5 反身代词

11.6 one 和 you 不可以互指

自测题

1. Hearing the unexpected loud noise，Cindy，Leroy，and me were so
   A　　B

startled that we almost jumped out of our seats. No error (OG Test 1)
C D E

2. Spotting Kim and I looking at the giant pandas, Brianna carefully maneuvered
A B
through the crowd and squeezed between us to get a look at them herself.
C D
No error (11.05)
E

3. For we students, concern about impending tuition hikes was even more acute
A B C
than apprehension about final exams. No error (OG Test 6)
D E

4. If it had been up to my sisters and I, we would have spent every summer
A B C
vacation at our cousin's house, which was right on the lake. No error (12.05)
D E

5. As the mayor was evaluating the proposed tax, he was less interested
A
in the revenue it would generate than in whether they would
B C
disproportionately affect certain income groups. No error (OG Test 1)
D E

6. The quality of multivitamin tablets is determined by how long its potency can be
A B C D
protected by the manufacturer's coating material. No error (OG Test 4)
E

7. The young fish were very tiny, yet each of them ate many times its own weight in
A B C D
solid food every day. No error (OG Test 6)
E

8. Before boarding, passengers must purchase his or her tickets in the
A B C
main concourse of the bus terminal because tickets are not sold on the
D
bus. No error (OG Test 1)
E

9. In addition to having a theoretical understanding of disease, medical students
A

must have experience in treating patients if he or she is to learn to diagnose illnesses
B C D
accurately. No error (08.05)
E

10. Neither Ms Perez nor Ms Tanaka believes that watching as much
A B
television as her son Sam does will lead to anything productive. No error
C D E
(OG Test 1)

11. Professor Chen repeated her point that the hero, if given the chance
A B
to relive the moment, would choose to do it. No error (OG Test8)
C D E

12. Because of their ability to eat large numbers of insects, some people are building bat houses in their backyards. (OG Test2)

A. Because of their ability to eat large numbers of insects, some people are building bat houses in their backyards.
B. They have the ability to eat large numbers of insects, so some people are building bat houses in their backyards.
C. Because bats can eat large numbers of insects, bat houses are being built in their backyards by some people.
D. Some people are building bat houses in their backyards because bats can eat large numbers of insects.
E. Bats can eat large numbers of insects, because of this some people are building bat houses in their backyards.

13. Many college students think that school policies should not be dictated by administrative officers but instead they should be submitted to the approval of the students. (11.05)

A. but instead they should be submitted to the approval of the students
B. but they should have been submitted to the approval of the students
C. but should be submitted to the students for approval
D. because they should be submitted for their approval to the students
E. however, they ought to be submitted to the students for their approval

14. People which need immediate reeducation for employment are impatient with the
A B C
prolonged debate over funding for the new national program. No error (OG Test 5)
D E

15. For the tourist which must travel on a restricted budget, the publisher of the
A B
guidebook has included a list of inexpensive hotels. No error (10.05)
C D E

16. During the labor dispute, barrels of potatoes were emptied across the highway, and they thereby blocked it to all traffic. (OG Test 4)

A. highway, and they thereby blocked it to all traffic
B. highway and therefore blocking it to all traffic
C. highway, by which all traffic was therefore blocked
D. highway, and therefore this had all traffic blocked
E. highway, thereby blocking all traffic

17. Television weather forecasters sometimes overdramatize the severity of the approaching snowstorm, cause segments of their audience unnecessary anxiety. (11.05)

A. cause
B. which cause
C. causing
D. they cause
E. yet caused

18. My colleague and myself received an award for our paper on the accuracy with
A B C
which a polygraph measures physiological processes. No error (OG Test 7)
D E

19. When Doris Lessing published *The Golden Notebook* in 1962, it instantly
A B
established herself as one of the most important literary voices of her generation.
C D
No error (06.01)
E

20. Although one likes to believe that your own children are beautiful, intelligent,
A B C
and well behaved, what one believes is not always the case. No error (OG Test 7)
D E

21. As a student becomes familiar with both early and contemporary Native
A
American literature, one may notice that traditional stories have influenced recent
B C D
ones. No error (OG Test 7)
E

22. Endowed with (A) powerful bodies, large claws, and piercing (B) teeth, mountain lions are one of (C) the most formidable wild creatures native to (D) North America. No error (E) (12.05HK)

11.1 格

例 11-1

Hearing (A) the unexpected loud noise, Cindy, Leroy, and me (B) were so startled (C) that we almost jumped out of our seats (D). No error (E) (OG Test 1)

该题选 B，代词的格使用错误。这也是我们要讲到的第一个代词的考点——格。

我们都知道，英语中的代词有主格和宾格之分。比如 I 和 me，we 和 us，he 和 him，she 和 her，you 和 you 等。在主语的位置用主格，在宾语的位置用宾格。在这道例题中，me 放在动词 were 之前，根据基础篇的讲解，这里是主语的位置，所以应该用主格。因此需要把宾格 me 改成主格 I。

例 11-2

Spotting Kim and I (A) looking at the giant pandas, Brianna carefully (B) maneuvered through the crowd and squeezed between us (C) to get a look at them (D) herself. No error (E) (11.05)

Spotting 是现在分词做状语，虽说已经不是动词，但仍保留了动词的本性，可以在其后接宾语。因此 Spotting 后面需要用宾格。A 选项错误，要改成 me。

在 SAT 考试中，不光需要注意放在动词后面的宾格，还需要注意介词后面也接宾格。比如常见的介词 by，for，between，among 等。我们一般说

The little box was destroyed by him.

而绝对不会说

The little box was destroyed by he.

例 11-3

For we (A) students, concern about impending (B) tuition hikes was even more acute (C) than apprehension about (D) final exams. No error (E) (OG Test 6)

题目中，for 没有连接句子而是名词，因此 for 是一个介词，介词与后面的名词构成介

宾结构，因此，这里的主格 we 要改成宾格的 us 的形式。故选 A。

例 11-4

If it had been up to my sisters and I, we would have spent every summer
A B C

vacation at our cousin's house, which was right on the lake. No error (12.05)
D E

在这道真题中，to 后接由 and 连接的名词短语，因此是一个介词，而不是常见的 to do 中的动词不定式符号。因此，to 后的名词结构与 to 形成介宾短语，所以选项 B 中的 I 应该用它的宾格 me。因此选 B。

11.2 代词单复数

例 11-5

As the mayor was evaluating the proposed tax, he was less interested
A

in the revenue it would generate than in whether they would
B C

disproportionately affect certain income groups. No error (OG Test 1)
D E

该题选 C，这道题的考点是——代词单复数。在这道题中，代词指代的名词是单数，却用复数“they”来指代。或者题目中的名词是复数，却用单数代词来指代。因此这类题的破题关键是看到题目中有代词画线的时候，要关注题目中的名词是单数还是复数。同时，有些题目会有一些干扰结构。

例 11-6

The quality of multivitamin tablets is determined by how long its potency can be
A B C D

protected by the manufacturer's coating material. No error (OG Test 4)
E

这道题目出现了 n_1 of n_2 的结构，我们需要通过对上下文的理解来确定 C 选项 its 指代的名词是 the quality，还是 tablets。由上下文逻辑可知，its 指代的是 tablets，是复数，因此代词单复数有误，故选 C。

例 11-7

The young fish were very tiny, yet each of them ate many times its own weight in
A B C D

solid food every day. No error (OG Test 6)
E

这道题中 fish 单复数同形，因此 A 选项的 were 我们无法在第一时间进行判断。继续往后分析，看到 each of them，可以判断 fish 在本题中是一个复数名词，因此 A 选项正确。C 选项，因为上文是 each of them，所以这里使用单数也无误。D 选项是固定用法，无误。

因此这道题没错，选 E。

由以上两道题目可以看出，短画线中，当代词画线时需要通过对上下文的理解来判定代词的单复数情况。

但是，在短画线中判断单复数时，也有一些固定的做题技巧，请看下面的例题。

例 11-8

Before boarding (A), passengers must purchase (B) his or her (C) tickets in the main concourse of the bus terminal because (D) tickets are not sold on the bus. No error (E) (OG Test 1)

这道题迷惑性较强，主要原因是对“his or her”是指单数还是复数拿捏不准。要注意，his or her 是一个单数指代，意为“他或者她”。由此可见，应该选 C。因为，his or her 无法指代之前的复数名词 passengers。

这种考法在真题中也反复出现，考查方法和这道例题一致，因此，可以总结出一个一眼盯答案的方法——his or her 或者它的变体 he or she 在短画线中一起画线出现，直接选出。错误的原因都是用 his or her 或者 he or she 去指代一个复数名词。

例 11-9

In addition to having (A) a theoretical understanding of disease, medical students must have experience in treating (B) patients if he or she (C) is to learn to (D) diagnose illnesses accurately. No error (E) (08.05)

这道短画线可以用一眼盯答案的技巧做题。he or she 是单数指代，不可以用于指代复数名词 medical students。这道题目同时也给我们一个提示，having 这种自杀词技巧只可以运用到长画线当中，在短画线中，不能使用。因此，不要误选 having。

11.3 指代不清

例 11-10

Neither Ms Perez nor (A) Ms Tanaka believes (B) that watching as much television as her (C) son Sam does will lead (D) to anything productive. No error (E) (OG Test 1)

这道题选 C。这道题目的考点是指代不清。指代不清是长画线和短画线中考试差别最大的考点之一。非常明显，这里的 her 我们不知道在指哪一位女士，是 Ms Perez 还是 Ms Tanaka。这是短画线中考的第一类指代不清。

例 11-11

Professor Chen repeated her point that (A) the hero, if given (B) the chance to relive (C) the moment,

would choose to do it. No error (OG Test8)
D E

根据分析句型结构，排除两个逗号中间隔开的插入语“if given the chance to relive the moment”，主句是 Professor Chen repeated her point that the hero would choose to do it. 不难发现，画线的代词 it，我们在原句中找不到 it 的指代对象。这是短画线中指代不清会考到的第二个点。因此选 D。

在短画线中，代词只考极端的情况。这一点和长画线有很大不同。代词在长画线中是考试的难点加重点。如果能用正确的思路排除代词，长画线的正确率就会大幅上升。

例 11-12

Because of their ability to eat large numbers of insects, some people are building bat houses in their backyards. (OG Test2)

A. Because of their ability to eat large numbers of insects, some people are building bat houses in their backyards.

B. They have the ability to eat large numbers of insects, so some people are building bat houses in their backyards.

C. Because bats can eat large numbers of insects, bat houses are being built in their backyards by some people.

D. Some people are building bat houses in their backyards because bats can eat large numbers of insects.

E. Bats can eat large numbers of insects, because of this some people are building bat houses in their backyards.

这是一道比较典型的代词考题，正确答案是 D。做长画线代词指代不清考点的原则如下：

(1) 不可以主观判定代词指代清晰，读题时要将代词圈出以提示。

(2) 代词在长画线中绝对正确只有一种可能——每个选项在相同位置上都有这个代词。

(3) 出现代词的选项要到最后才会选。

按照这个做题原则，我们来看题。首先不可以用自己的主观理解来判定代词指代没有问题。这一点非常重要。代词指代不清这个点难就难在容易对代词视而不见，或者用自己的主观判断来判定代词没有问题。这些误区都是我们在长画线中要坚决避免的。由原则一，A，B，C，D，E 五个选项要将代词圈出，并在第一时间列入雷区。由原则二，题目中有两个 their，后一个 in their backyards 在 A，B，C，D，E 五个选项中都有，所以可以判定这个代词的使用没有问题。接下来，原则三，有代词的选项放最后，因此 A、B 选项先不看，剩 C，D，E。其中 C 选项有自杀词 being，E 选项有自杀词 this，C，E 排除，本题选 D。“有代词的选项放最后”是代词长画线解题时最好用的技巧，一般而言，只有当没有代词的选项都错的情况下，我们才需要看下有代词的选项是否可选。

例 11-13

Many college students think that school policies should not be dictated by administrative officers but instead they should be submitted to the approval of the students. (11.05)

A. but instead they should be submitted to the approval of the students

B. but they should have been submitted to the approval of the students

C. but should be submitted to the students for approval

D. because they should be submitted for their approval to the students

E. however, they ought to be submitted to the students for their approval

分析句子结构，主语是 students，动词 think，后接一个由 that 引导的宾语从句。从句的主语是 policies，动词是 should not be dictated。从句中有一个由 but 连接的平行结构。主语是 they，动词是 should be submitted。根据代词做题思路，有代词的选项圈出后放后，先看没有代词的选项。因此，A，B，D，E 选项放后。剩 C。看 C 选项，句子结构正确，因此直接选 C。

11.4 which 的正确使用

例 11-14

People which need (A) immediate reeducation for employment are (B) impatient with (C) the prolonged debate over (D) funding for the new national program. No error (E) (OG Test 5)

此题选 A，which 是关系代词，因此也把它归到代词考点中。这道题的考点——which 指物不能指人，因此 A 选项 people which 错误。

例 11-15

For (A) the tourist which must travel (B) on a restricted budget, the publisher of the guidebook has included (C) a list of (D) inexpensive hotels. No error (E) (10.05)

这道题中，B 选项 which 不可以指人 tourist，所以 B 错误。

但是，在长画线中，which 的考法较为特殊——which 不可指前面的整件事。

例 11-16

During the labor dispute, barrels of potatoes were emptied across the highway, and they thereby blocked it to all traffic. (OG Test 4)

A. highway, and they thereby blocked it to all traffic

B. highway and therefore blocking it to all traffic

C. highway, by which all traffic was therefore blocked

D. highway, and therefore this had all traffic blocked

E. highway, thereby blocking all traffic

这道题选 E。首先，根据长画线自杀词，可以排除 D 选项。选项中，this 单独做主语，

因此指代不清排除。接下来，有代词的选项要放到最后才选，因此 A，B 中分别有 they，it，直接看到选项 C，E。C 选项，by which 中的 which 指代了前面的整件事，即 barrels of potatoes were emptied across the highway 这件事，因此错误。E 选项是一个现在分词做状语，逻辑主语是 barrels of potatoes，符合主动关系，thereby 是副词，不连接句子，因此 E 选项无误。

关于 which 不可以指前面的整件事这个考点，考生需要注意，在非限制性定语从句中，which 是有这个用法的，例如：

Jack's girlfriend always likes dancing with other boys，which makes him nuts.

上句的说法在英语中是正确的。但是在 SAT 考试中，像这样 which 指代前面整件事情的用法是不允许的。原因是，SAT 语法是严谨的规范性语法。which 在定语从句中，叫关系代词。通过这个命名，我们可以知道代词只能用于指代名词。如果 which 这个关系代词指代前面的整件事，势必要指前句中的动词，而代词无法指代动词，所以这种用法不允许。

例 11-17

Television weather forecasters sometimes overdramatize the severity of the approaching snowstorm，cause segments of their audience unnecessary anxiety.（2011.05）

A. cause

B. which cause

C. causing

D. they cause

E. yet caused

这是一道 2011 年 5 月的真题。这道题选 C。不难看出，这道题目的错误原因是 run-on 句型。逗号连接两个动词，所以句子结构不成立。因此，可能的选项有 B，C。B 选项错误的原因是 which 在题目中指代了“television weather forecasters sometimes overdramatize the severity of approaching snowstorm”整件事，所以不可选。C 选项，causing 是现在分词做状语，与主语主谓一致，因此是正确选项。

由此可见，SAT 对语法的考查，有自己的特殊性，所以一定要对 SAT 语法考点和原则牢记并熟练掌握。

11.5 反身代词

例 11-18

My colleague and myself (A) received an award for (B) our paper on the accuracy with (C) which a polygraph measures (D) physiological processes. No error (E)（OG Test 7）

该题选 A，考点是反身代词。反身代词是代词考点中的一个小考点。反身代词的使用方式要求在限定范围内要有反身对象。比如，同一个成分中，例如 I myself。或者一个句子中，例如，He loves himself。但，我们不能说 He loves herself，因为

herself 没有反身对象。A 选项 myself 在主语部分，回找没有反身对象。所以 A 错误。

例 11-19

When Doris Lessing published *The Golden Notebook* in 1962, it instantly
A B

established herself as one of the most important literary voices of her generation.
C D

No error (06.01)
E

主句中主语 it，动词 established，宾语 herself。反身代词 herself 没有反身对象，因此选项 A 错误。

11.6 one 和 you 不可以互指

例 11-20

Although one likes to believe that your own children are beautiful, intelligent,
A B C

and well behaved, what one believes is not always the case. No error (OG Test 7)
D E

该题选 C，考点是 one 和 you 不可以互相指代。

例 11-21

As a student becomes familiar with both early and contemporary Native
A

American literature, one may notice that traditional stories have influenced recent
B C D

ones. No error (OG Test 7)
E

B 选项的 one，不可以用于指代 a student。因此 B 错。

对于 one 的考查，除了不可互指外，还要知道的是 one 是单数指代，不可以指复数名词。

例 11-22

Endowed with powerful bodies, large claws, and piercing teeth, mountain lions
A B

are one of the most formidable wild creatures native to North America.
C D

No error (12.05HK)
E

C 选项 one 不可以用于指代复数名词 lions，因此 C 错。

在代词考点的最后，再来总结一下 SAT 中常考的代词归类：

第一梯队：it，they，them，their；
第二梯队：he or she，his or her；
第三梯队：one 和 you 不可以互相指代，one 要指代单数名词。

第 12 讲　动　　词

动词是 SAT 语法的重要考点，与代词一样，在长画线（IS）和短画线（ISE）中的考法各有侧重。长画线侧重考 run－on 句型（连写句）和不完整句。短画线侧重动词时态和动词单复数。但是长短画线在动词考点的解题思路一致。动词考点是最需要考生把握全句结构的考点之一。笔者反复强调，在进行 SAT 语法读题时，往往是看得越多错得越多。单凭线性的，从头至尾的读题，对解题是无益的。因为，SAT 干扰项的出题，就是在重要结构中间夹杂各种修饰限制，将重要结构埋没在长句中。因此，抓结构，跳出题目做题目，是解题的重点。本讲内容安排如下：

12.1　动词时态
12.2　动词单复数
12.3　run-on 句型与不完整句

自测题：

1. Jerome often referred to (A) art history textbooks while he (B) was sculpting; whenever he learned a new method in art class, he seeks out (C) the work of sculptors who had used it (D) in the past. No error (E) (OG Test 1)

2. Dr. Chien-Shiung Wu has disproved a widely accepted theory of physics when she showed that identical nuclear particles do not always act alike. (OG Test 1)
A. has disproved
B. having disproved
C. disproved
D. disproves
E. disproving

3. Many admire Louisa May Alcott for her detailed descriptions of (A) nineteenth-century domestic life in novels such as (B) Little Women, but few have read (C) the lurid thrillers she writes (D) early in

her career. No error (OG Test 2)
E

4. Traffic was heavy, so by the time Brianne finally arrived at the theater, we waited for her
A B
for an hour, missing the entire first act of the play. No error (OG Test 3)
C D E

5. Despite its cultural importance, the Daily Gazette lost 70 percent of
A B
its subscribers since 1920 and, by 1955, was losing as much as $200,000 a
C D
year. No error (06.01)
E

6. Because many Szechuan recipes require for one to cook without there having to be interruptions, it is a good idea to measure all ingredients in advance. (07.01)

A. Because many Szechuan recipes require for one to cook without there having to be interruptions,
B. Because many Szechuan recipes require that one cook without interruption,
C. Being that many Szechuan recipes require you to cook and not be interrupted,
D. Many Szechuan recipes require that one cook without interruption and
E. When following many Szechuan recipes it is advisable for one to cook without interruptions and therefore

7. Our tour guide requested that, while hiking through the national park, our garbage not be thrown on the trails. (12.10)

A. our garbage not be thrown
B. our garbage should not be thrown
C. not to throw our garbage
D. we did not throw our garbage
E. we not throw our garbage

8. Undoubtedly, more voters in the urban areas will have voted for Julia Morton if
A B C
she had taken a less conservative stand on zoning codes than she did.
D
No error (OG Test 8)
E

9. After marching for four hours in temperatures exceeding ninety degrees the band members were as soaked as if marching through a rainstorm. (OG Test 5)

A. if marching
B. having marched

C. if from marching
D. if they had marched
E. if they would have marched

10. If there had been a power failure, the hospital will run on electricity from its own generators, which can operate for 200 hours. (08.10)
A. If there had been
B. If there were
C. Had there been
D. Should there be
E. There has been

11. Were I to be granted a whole month in which to do whatever I wanted, I would travel throughout Africa and see as much of that continent as I could. (11.01)
A. Were I to be granted
B. If I would have been granted
C. With me being granted
D. Granting me
E. By being granted

12. Bridget worried that she might not be able to bring back many souvenirs were she to take only one suitcase on vacation. (11.05)
A. were she to take
B. if she would have taken
C. was she to have taken
D. had she took
E. by having taken

13. Had (A) I known that we would be (B) walking the fifteen (C) blocks from the movie theater to the restaurant, I would of (D) worn more comfortable shoes. No error (E) (11.05)

14. The grooved and barbed spears of the box jellyfish, each (A) trailed by (B) a poison thread, is released (C) when (D) the animal is threatened. No error (E) (OG Test 1)

15. Peter's seemingly effortless (A) flights, achieved through (B) the use of sophisticated technical equipment, continues (C) to delight those who (D) see the play Peter Pan. No error (E) (OG Test 2)

16. Introducing (A) new ideas and replacing old ones (B) is (C) always a higly controversial matter, especially when (D) there is already tension between an older and a younger generation. No error (E) (OG Test 10)

17. The candidate called for (A) medical insurance reform, but to me seemed less interested in the plight of uninsured citizens than in (B) whether enough is (C) registered (D) to vote. No error (E) (06.05)

18. Also supported (A) by the commission was (B) the proposed health clinics and the proposed center (C) to distribute information on job-training (D) opportunities. No error (E) (OG Test 4)

19. Available through the school's guidance office is (A) a job directory and a list of job referral centers that provide (B) information for (C) students in need of (D) employment. No error (E) (OG Test 6)

20. Absent from the curtain call to our disappointment was (A) the director and the producer, both of whom (B) had done (C) so much to bring about (D) this triumphant opening night. No error (E) (09.01)

21. What (A) becomes apparent from assessing (B) scientific accomplishments is that only relatively recently have (C) the necessary technology been developed for (D) solving the mysteries of genetics. No error (E) (06.05)

22. Only after reading it carefully several times was the poem beginning to make sense to me.

(11.01)

A. was the poem beginning to make sense to me

B. was when I began to make sense of the poem

C. I began making sense of the poem

D. did the poem begin making sense to me

E. did I begin to make sense of the poem

23. Directed by George Wolfe, the Broadway musical *Bring in 'Da Noise, Bring in 'Da Funk* telling (A) how (B) tap dancing evolved from (C) the African American experience in the decades following (D) the Civil War. No error (E) (OG Test 5)

24. The thoughtful student wonders what Patrick Henry meant (A) when he (B) talked about liberty because (C) most of the members of the House of Burgesses then having been (D) slaveholders. No error (E) (OG Test 5)

25. A recent report indicates that sleep-deprived drivers caused more than 100, 000 accidents last year, they fall asleep at the wheel. (OG Test 1)

A. year, they fall

B. year, and they fall

C. year by falling

D. year and falling

E. year, they were falling

26. Several of the forest fires that occurred last summer which were because people are careless. (OG Test 1)

A. which were because people are careless

B. were caused by human carelessness

C. because people are careless

D. are because of human carelessness

E. happened from people being careless

27. Ruben Blades, already certified as a lawyer in his native country of Panama, supported himself by singing salsa while pursuing an advanced degree in international law at Harvard University. (OG Test 1)

A. Blades, already certified as a lawyer

B. Blades, already being a certified lawyer

C. Blades, already certified for being a lawyer

D. Blades was already certified as a lawyer

E. Blades is certified as a lawyer already

28. Frequently on tour, a band called the Chieftains revered internationally as spirited performers of traditional Irish music. (06.01)

A. revered internationally as spirited performers

B. revered internationally and they are spirited performers

C. is revered internationally for its spirited performances

D. is revered internationally as giving spirited performances

E. are revered internationally as being spirited performers

29. At the conclusion of the novel *The Great Gatsby*, Nick Carraway, a young Midwesterner recently arrived to (A) New York, moodily (B) watches (C) the blinking green light at the tip of (D) Long Island. No error (E) (07.01)

12.1 动词时态

动词时态是 SAT 中的一大重点，共有五种需要注意的考法。

1. 常规考法

常规考法又以下面三种较为常见。

(1) 全句都是过去式，只有画线部分为现在相应的时态，画线部分错。

例 12-1

Jerome often referred to (A) art history textbooks while he (B) was sculpting; whenever he learned a new method in art class, he seeks (C) out the work of sculptors who had used it (D) in the past. No error (E) (OG Test 1)

全句话都是过去相应的时态，只有画线部分是现在相应的时态，因此画线部分 seeks out 时态错误。故选 C。

(2) when，while 前后时态要一致。

例 12-2

Dr. Chien-Shiung Wu has disproved a widely accepted theory of physics when she showed that identical nuclear particles do not always act alike. (OG Test 1)

A. has disproved

B. having disproved

C. disproved

D. disproves

E. disproving

很容易看出，题目中有一个信号词——when。when 前后时态要一致。后面未画线部

分是过去式，因此前面不可以用现在相应的时态。因此排除选项 A，D。由 having 自杀词，排除 B。E 选项使主句没有谓语动词。因此这道题选 C。

（3）时间状语在原句中隐藏。

例 12-3

Many admire Louisa May Alcott for her detailed descriptions of nineteenth-century domestic
A
life in novels such as Little Women，but few have read the lurid thrillers she writes early in
B C D
her career. No error（OG Test 2）
E

这道题选 D。时间状语在原句中隐藏，题目中的 early in her career 指示 she writes 的时态不对。

2. 一般过去时改成过去完成时

SAT 语法对时态进行考查时，比较常见的出题趋势是将画线部分的一般现在时改成一般过去时，有时也会有将一般过去时改成一般现在时的情况出现。在 SAT 语法时态题里，少见把一般现在时改成现在完成时的情况，但是会有将一般过去时改成过去完成时的情况。

例 12-4

Traffic was heavy，so by the time Brianne finally arrived at the theater，we waited for her
A B
for an hour，missing the entire first act of the play. No error（OG Test 3）
C D E

这道题选 B。SAT 对动词时态的考查中，要把 B 选项的 waited 改成 had waited，即，把一般过去时改成过去完成时。

那么具体是什么时候需要把画线部分的一般过去时改成过去完成时呢？

在英语语法中，对过去完成时的使用情况分为以下两种：

（1）宾语从句间接引语。在进行话语转述时，如果主句部分的动词是一个过去时态，那么从句部分就应当是过去相应的时态。例如，一个人说到

A. I have lived in New York for 10 years.

另一个人听完这句话之后进行转述，这句话就变成了

B. she said she had lived in New York for 10 years.

我们对应 A，B 两句话，B 进行间接转述时，由于主句部分的时态变成了过去时态，因此，从句部分要变成过去相应的时态——由现在完成时变为过去完成时。

（2）前后相继发生的两个动作，中间有较为明显的时间间隔，或隐含着的时间间隔，如果后面发生的动作用了过去时态，那么前面的动作就要用过去完成时。

在 SAT 的时态考查中，第二种考查情况居多。如 OG Test 3 的题目所示，前后相继发生了两个动作 waited 和 arrived，两者之间有明显的时间间隔“for an hour”，后面发生的动作 arrived 用了一般过去时态，前一个动作 waited 就应该使用过去完成时态。因此选择 B 选项。

由以上例题可知，如果要将题目中的过去时态改成过去完成时态，一定要有一个与之相继发生的过去时态动词作参照。从这道例题里，我们还需要知道句中的 by the time 这个结构。在结构篇的内容里我们提到过，by the time 是一个可以用做连接词的介宾短语，当句中出现 by the time 时，主句一般用完成时态。这也是本题的一个线索词。

3. since 在时态题中的强对应关系

SAT 语法中的时态题，很少有明确的对应关系，但是 since 的用法是个特例，当发现句中有用做表示“从……开始”的 since 时，主句一定用现在完成时态。

在 SAT 语法中的时态题中，表示“从……开始”的 since，如果用做连接词，从句用一般过去时，则主句用现在完成时。since 用做介词时，句子使用现在完成时。例如：

I have lived in New York since I was born.

I haven't seen her since 2001.

例 12-5

Despite (A) its cultural importance, the Daily Gazette lost (B) 70 percent of its subscribers since 1920 and, by 1955, was losing (C) as much as (D) $200,000 a year. No error (E) (06.01)

答案选 B。我们看到 since 1920，since 是一个判定时态的信号词，句子应该用现在完成时态。因此选项 B（lost）时态有误，应改成 has lost。

4. 段时间与完成时的关系

在 SAT 语法中，与某种时态有绝对对应关系，也就是我们说的强对应关系的只有 since。其他的时间状语，如段时间与时态是没有绝对对应关系的。

完成时与段时间常常连用，但是，不能错误地将“常常”连用理解为“绝对”连用。请看以下例句，并判断句子的正误情况。

① I have lived in New York for 2 years.

② I lived in New York for 2 years.

③ Michael Jackson has died for 2 years.

第①句是最常见的现在完成时与段时间连用的句子，表示在纽约住了两年，还有继续住下去的可能。第②句用的是一般过去时，动作在过去发生，并且已经结束。表示在纽约住过两年，现在已经不在纽约住了。这里虽然没有用现在完成时，但仍然和段时间连用了。第③句虽然是完成时，但是跟段时间连用是错误的。如果按这句话的逻辑，意思就是“迈克尔·杰克逊死了有两年之久还没有死完，还要继续死下去”，不合常理。

由第①句和第②句进行对比，可以看到，段时间不只会和完成时态连用，也能和过去时态连用。由第①句和第③句进行对比，可以看到虽然同是完成时态，却不是都能和段时间连用的。

由以上三句的对比，我们可知，段时间并不总是和完成时有连用关系，段时间真正搭配的是可延续性动词。当句中的动词是延续性的，就可以与段时间连用。因此，需要注意，在 SAT 语法题目中，不能一看到段时间，就想把画线的动词改成完成时态。这是错误的思路。

5. 虚拟语气

虚拟语气是自 2011 年起的一个人气考点。在 2011 年前，虚拟语气只是 SAT 中的一个小考点，从 2011 年起成为几乎每次都会考到的考点。在 2012 年的真题中，对虚拟语气的考查更为细致。

我们在结构篇的第 9 讲详细讲解过虚拟语气的使用情况及使用方法，在这一讲，我们来看虚拟语气是如何考查的。

首先回顾一下虚拟语气的语法要点。

（1）名词性从句的虚拟。当名词性从句中有表示愿望、建议、命令、请求或意志等语气的标志词时，从句需要使用虚拟。虚拟的形式为 should + 动词原形，should 可以省略。

例 12-6

Because many Szechuan recipes require for one to cook without there having to be interruptions, it is a good idea to measure all ingredients in advance. （07. 01）

A. Because many Szechuan recipes require for one to cook without there having to be interruptions,

B. Because many Szechuan recipes require that one cook without interruption,

C. Being that many Szechuan recipes require you to cook and not be interrupted,

D. Many Szechuan recipes require that one cook without interruption and

E. When following many Szechuan recipes it is advisable for one to cook without interruptions and therefore

这道题目中出现了名词性从句的虚拟。根据长画线中自杀词技巧可以直接将 A，C 选项排除。D 选项，and 前后不平行。E 选项有代词 it，放后。只能选 B。而 B 选项中表示要求的 require 的宾语从句，使用了虚拟语气，在 one 后省略了 should，形成 one cook 的结构。

以往对名词性从句的虚拟考查较少，但在 2012 年的真题中，这种虚拟再次出现，

例 12-7

Our tour guide requested that, while hiking through the national park, our garbage not be thrown on the trails. （12. 10）

A. our garbage not be thrown

B. our garbage should not be thrown

C. not to throw our garbage

D. we did not throw our garbage

E. we not throw our garbage

分析句型结构，主语是 guide，动词是 request，宾语部分是由 that 引导的宾语从句。从句中出现一个 while hiking 的结构，需要从句的主语也是 hiking 的主语。在逻辑主语的考

点中会对这个结构进行详细讲解。由此可知，这道题可能的选项只有 D 和 E，因为主语都是 we，we 是可以主动 hike 的。而 D，E 选项中，因为主句的动词是 request，是表示“要求”的动词，宾语从句要用虚拟，（should）+动词原形。而否定形式是（should）not +动词原形的结构。因此这道题选 E。

（2）if 条件状语从句的虚拟。

在本书结构篇第 9 讲中对虚拟语气进行了详细的讲解，下面我们再回顾一下 if 条件状语从句的虚拟，见表 12-1。

表 12-1 if 条件状语从句的虚拟

	虚拟条件句	主句
过去	had + 过去分词	would，could，might，should + have + 过去分词
现在	动词过去式/were	would，could，might，should + 动词原形
将来	动词过去式 were to do should + 动词原型	would，could，might，should + 动词原形

例 12-8

Undoubtedly，more voters in the urban areas will have voted for Julia Morton if
A B C

she had taken a less conservative stand on zoning codes than she did.
D

No error（OG Test 8）
E

这道题目中，选项 A 错误。根据 if 条件状语从句虚拟的结构，if 从句部分的 had taken 是对过去的虚拟，主句部分应该用 would have done 的结构。因此，选项 A 的 will have voted要改成 would have voted。

（3）在 SAT 语法中，做虚拟语气的题目，有三点注意事项：

1）严格区分主句和从句的结构。SAT 对虚拟语气进行考查时常常将主句和从句的结构进行混搭来出干扰选项。需要牢记的是，从句是由 if 做标志词的，主句是有 would/could/might 的结构。if 和 would/could/might 是绝对不可能同时出现的。

例 12-9

After marching for four hours in temperatures exceeding ninety degrees the band members were as soaked as if marching through a rainstorm.（OG Test 5）

A. if marching

B. having marched

C. if from marching

D. if they had marched

E. if they would have marched

本题是 as if 的虚拟语气。根据对主句部分的分析，可以知道本题是对过去的虚拟，因此 if 从句部分也需要是对过去的虚拟，因此选 D。而 E 选项是迷惑性很强的一个干扰项。这种干扰项在真题中也反复出现。

2）语气的交叉。在结构篇第 9 讲中我们提到过，if 条件状语从句的虚拟主句和从句的时间并不一定是成套出现的，主句和从句可以根据说话的需求分别使用不同时间的虚拟。在 SAT 中，暂时没有出现过这种时态交叉的考查，而出现的是语气交叉。

例 12-10

If there had been a power failure, the hospital will run on electricity from its own generators, which can operate for 200 hours. (08. 10)

A. If there had been

B. If there were

C. Had there been

D. Should there be

E. There has been

本题，未画线主句部分是一个将来时态，而画线部分是一个 if 的从句。虽然主句部分没有使用虚拟语气，但是 E 选项没有连接词连接两个句子，故排除。A，B，C，D 四个选项中，我们可以推出，题目需要选一个从句部分的虚拟。主句用将来时，从句也需要是将来时，符合将来虚拟的只能是选项 D。D 选项是 if there should be 的倒装。需要注意的是，这种从句虚拟，主句不虚拟的语气交叉在平时是不可以随意使用的。另外，B 选项 if there were 是对现在的虚拟，而非对将来的虚拟，将来虚拟中使用 were 的情况是 were to do。

3）虚拟语气的倒装。虚拟语气在考题中最喜欢以倒装的方式出题。考生需要牢记，当 if 从句中出现 had/were/should 时，可以将 if 省略，这些词提前，形成虚拟语气的倒装。

例 12-11

Were I to be granted a whole month in which to do whatever I wanted, I would travel throughout Africa and see as much of that continent as I could. (11. 01)

A. Were I to be granted

B. If I would have been granted

C. With me being granted

D. Granting me

E. By being granted

这是一道 if 条件状语从句虚拟的题目。未画线主句部分是 would travel，根据上下文，是对将来时间的虚拟，因此 if 从句部分也需要是对将来的虚拟，符合这个条件的只有 A 选项。A 选项是 if I were to be granted 的倒装。而 B 选项是最常见的主从结构混搭的干扰项，要学会识别。

例 12-12

Bridget worried that she might not be able to bring back many souvenirs were she to take only one suitcase on vacation. (11.05)

A. were she to take

B. if she would have taken

C. was she to have taken

D. had she took

E. by having taken

本题 worried 后的宾语从句部分是 if 条件状语从句的虚拟结构。主句是 might not be able to 的结构，根据上下文可知，是对将来的虚拟。因此，画线部分的从句也应该使用对将来的虚拟。符合将来虚拟的选项只有 A。A 选项是 if she were to do 的倒装。而 B 选项，就是主从混搭的干扰项。

例 12-13

Had I known that we would be walking the fifteen blocks from the movie
A B C

theater to the restaurant, I would of worn more comfortable shoes. No error (11.05)
D E

本题是 if I had known 的倒装，是对过去的虚拟。因此 D 选项错误，主句部分应该改成 I would have worn。

12.2 动词单复数

动词单复数，即主谓一致，有两种考法。

1. 常规考法：S，...，V + O

例 12-14

The grooved and barbed spears of the box jellyfish, each trailed by a
A B

poison thread, is released when the animal is threatened. No error (OG Test 1)
C D E

在前面的部分，已经提到了 SAT 语法做题思路是抓结构，对考点两步走。也反复强调了看到一道题目要抓住句子结构，再进行考点对应的重要性。在动词单复数的考点中尤其如此。根据上面的例题，我们很容易分析出这句话的主语是 spears，动词是 is，非常明显，主语和谓语的数不一致，是动词单复数使用有误，因此答案选 C。

注意这道题的主语绝不是 box jellyfish，这是常见的干扰方法。虽然 the box jellyfish 是一个名词，但是前面有一个不容分割的介词 of，因此 of the box jellyfish 是一个整体，是介词性质，因此不能做主语。

这类题目是 SAT 中最为常见的单复数考法。句法结构如下：

S，...，V + O

在主语和谓语动词中间插入一长串修饰用以混淆视听，如果不分析句子结构，只会线性

地进行句子阅读，就很容易掉到题目的陷阱里，即动词跟前面紧挨的名词保持了数的一致。

例 12-15

Peter's seemingly effortless flights, achieved through the use of
A B
sophisticated technical equipment, continues to delight those who see
C D
the play Peter Pan. No error (OG Test 2)
E

这道题目也属于 S，...，V + O 的常规考法。经过分析句型结构，主语是 flights，谓语动词是 continues，由此可知，主谓不一致，属于动词单复数的问题，因此答案选 C。

在这类常规考法中，SAT 也会加大一些难度。

例 12-16

Introducing new ideas and replacing old ones is always a highly controversial
A B C
matter, especially when there is already tension between an older and a younger
D
generation. No error (OG Test 10)
E

这道题目最容易误选 C 选项，认为 is 之前是由 and 连接的两者。但实际上，introducing new ideas 和 replacing old ones 是同一过程，因此动词部分只能用单数 is。所以，这道题选 E。

例 12-17

The candidate called for medical insurance reform, but to me seemed less
A
interested in the plight of uninsured citizens than in whether enough is registered to
B C D
vote. No error (06.05)
E

分析句型，主语是 the candidate，动词是 called，连接词 but 连接并列句，主语是 he，系动词是 seemed，表语是 interested。比较结构 than，比较状语部分 in the plight of uninsured citizens 和 in whether enough is registered to vote。由此可见主句、并列句以及比较部分的结构均没有问题。whether 后接一个句子，主语的位置是 enough，动词是 is。根据我们在结构篇对句法框架的梳理可知，主语的部分只能是名词或者代词，enough 是一个形容词，是无法做主语的。这是一个常见的省略结构，形容词后的名词如果在上下文中可以推理出，英语中常常将这一名词省略。因此，动词的单复数情况需要由省略的名词来确定。根据上下文，enough 后省略的是 citizens，是一个复数名词。所以与系动词的 is 不匹配，答案选 C，应将 is 改为 are。

由此，需要注意（the）+形容词做主语时的动词单复数问题。（the）+形容词是省略了主语的情况，可能加单数名词，也可能加复数名词，具体需要看上下文中省略的名词

单复数的情况来决定动词的单复数。

2. 倒装

在动词单复数中，除了以上的常规考法外，我们还需要关注另外一种不容易识别的考法——倒装。

例 12-18

Also supported (A) by the commission was (B) the proposed health clinics and the proposed center (C) to distribute information on job-training (D) opportunities. No error (E) (OG Test 4)

这道题乍一看比较难理出句子结构，但是破题的方法恰恰隐藏其中。

一句话按照正常的语序，应该是主谓宾。根据基础篇的内容，我们知道，在动词之前，主语的位置上只能有名词，或者各种名词性的结构。而此句话，谓语动词 was 之前，无法找到一个可以做主语的结构——不要因为找到 commission 而激动，要注意 by the commission 是一个统一的介宾短语，不可拆分。also 是副词，supported 也是副词性质，因此我们在本该出现主语的位置找不到主语。这就是动词单复数中，最难的一类考法——倒装。

倒装是结构篇的内容。分为完全倒装和部分倒装两类。我们先回顾，完全倒装。

结构篇提到过，完全倒装的使用情况是，遇到副词或者介词短语做状语放句首时（如 in，out 等），例如：

In the lecture hall sits a professor.

Out rushed the children.

在 SAT 语法中，除了会有大家熟知的，如 in 这种介词放在句首引发的句子的完全倒装以外，还有一些不熟悉，但是出现频率没有规律的，如 among，also 这样的介词或者副词短语放句首引发的完全倒装。更特殊的是，有时候 SAT 还会出现随意倒装。由于它不拘一格的出题策略，如果死记硬背引发倒装的词，是没有太大作用的。所以，回归本源，不变应万变的做题方法如下：

如果在动词之前，找不到可以做主语的名词，或者名词性的结构，则句子是完全倒装，它的主谓一致要到动词之后去找。

如例 12-18，在 was 之前找不到可以做主语的名词或者名词性结构，因此判定这句话一定是倒装，到 was 之后去找动词的主谓一致。was 之后是 the health clinics and the proposed center 两者，因此 B 选项错，应该改成复数 were。

例 12-19

Available through the school's guidance office is (A) a job directory and a list of job referral centers that provide (B) information for (C) students in need of (D) employment. No error (E) (OG Test 6)

根据完全倒装的做题方法，动词 is 之前是 available through 的结构，is 前找不到可以做主语的名词，这句一定倒装，主谓一致要到动词之后去找。is 之后是 a job directory and a list of job referral，两者，动词需要使用复数。因此选 A。

例 12-20

Absent from the curtain call to our disappointment was the director and the producer, both
A
of whom had done so much to bring about this triumphant opening night. No error (09.01)
B C D E

分析句型结构，was 前 absent from 不是可以做主语的名词，因此句子一定倒装，主谓一致到动词后找。was 后的名词是 the director and the producer，是两个人，所以应该把选项 A 的 was 改成 were。这里需要注意，and 前后连接的两个名词如果分别有 the，那么说的就是两个人。如果 and 前后连接的两个名词只用一个 the，那么说的就是一个人，例如：

the teacher and the singer 老师和歌唱家，说的是两个人

the teacher and singer 老师，同时也是歌唱家，说的是一个人

SAT 语法中也有对部分倒装的考查。而主要考的就是 only 的倒装。在结构篇已经对 only 的部分倒装情况进行了讲解，简单回顾一下。例如：

① Only you can help me.

② Only in this way can we win the game.

③ Only when he comes back, will we begin our meeting.

由例句①与例句②、例句③对比后可以看出，only 后加的是一个名词或者代词的时候，only 放句首是不产生倒装的。Only 后加介宾结构或者直接连接状语从句的时候，only 放句首产生部分倒装。

由例句①和例句③对比可以看出，only 的倒装是主句倒装“will we begin”，而不是从句倒装“when he comes back”。

例 12-21

What becomes apparent from assessing scientific accomplishments is that only relatively recently
A B
have the necessary technology been developed for solving the mysteries of genetics. No error (06.05)
C D E

分析句型结构，主句主语是一个由 what 引导的名词性从句，动词是 is，表语部分是由 that 引导的表语从句。表语从句中，only + relatively recently，是状语结构，句子需要部分倒装。从句的主语在 have 之后。主语是 the necessary technology，是单数，因此 C 选项的 have 错误。

例 12-22

Only after reading it carefully several times was the poem beginning to make sense to me. (11.01)

A. was the poem beginning to make sense to me

B. was when I began to make sense of the poem

C. I began making sense of the poem

D. did the poem begin making sense to me

E. did I begin to make sense of the poem

分析句子结构，句子由 only after doing 打头，是 only 的部分倒装情况。其中，after reading 是一个逻辑主语结构，要求主句的主语和 reading 的主语一致。根据这一思路，不可以做 reading 的主语的选项错误，故 A，B，D 排除。only 要加部分倒装，因此只能选 E 选项，助动词 did 提前。

12.3 run-on 句型与不完整句

run-on 句型及不完整句是 SAT 中的重要考点。尤其在长画线中，是一个必考点。第一，这个考点必考；第二，几乎是长画线中每道题都会出现的干扰选项出题方法。因此分析句子结构是读题重点。

在结构篇，我们已经讲过在英语语法中构成句法结构的最重要的原则——一句话里有且只有一个谓语动词。run-on 句型和不完整句考的就是“有且只有一个谓语动词”。

例 12-23

Directed by George Wolfe, the Broadway musical *Bring in Da Noise*, *Bring in Da Funk* telling (A) how (B) tap dancing evolved from (C) the African American experience in the decades following (D) the Civil War. No error (E) (OG Test 5)

根据先分析句型结构，后进行考点对应的方法，这句话的主语是“the Broadway musical *Da Noise*, *Bring in Da Funk*，但是这句话找不到谓语，因为放在谓语位置的是“telling”，而这个词是非谓语动词，不能做动词。由此，这句话没有谓语，因此答案是 A。

例 12-24

The thoughtful student wonders what Patrick Henry meant (A) when he (B) talked about liberty because (C) most of the members of the House of Burgesses then having been (D) slaveholders. No error (E) (OG Test5)

这句话主句的主语是 the thoughtful student，动词是 wonders，动词后跟了一个宾语从句 what Patrick Henry meant，宾语从句后面跟了状语从句 when he talked about liberty 和由 because 引导的状语从句，但是我们发现在 because 引导的这个从句中，只有主语 most，却没有谓语动词，因此选项 D 错。

以上两道题目都是考“有一个谓语动词”这个问题的。因为句中最不可缺少的就是句子的核心——谓语动词。在短画线中，对 run-on 句型和不完整句的考查较少，而在长画线中，这一考点是非常重要的必考考点。不但当做题干来考，还当做绝大多数题目的干扰选项来考。

例 12-25

A recent report indicates that sleep-deprived drivers caused more than 100, 000 accidents

last year, they fall asleep at the wheel. (OG Test 1)

A. year, they fall

B. year, and they fall

C. year by falling

D. year and falling

E. year, they were falling

经过分析句型结构，我们看到主语是 a recent report，谓语是 indicates，谓语之后跟了一个由 that 引导的宾语从句。从句中主语是 drivers，谓语是 caused。在这句话结束，逗号之后，我们又看到一个句子。主语是 they，谓语是 fall。根据英语中对句子的要求，一句话里有且只有一个谓语动词，说明英语中是绝对不允许有一逗到底的句子。根据结构分析，我们对应到相应的语法考点——run-on 句型。因此，在选项中避免了 run-on 的句子就有可能是正确答案。由此 A，E 选项最先排除。D 选项 and 前后的结构不一致，排除。只剩下 B，C 两个选项。而 B 选项根据代词在长画线中的做题技巧，放最后。因此选 C。

例 12-26

Several of the forest fires that occurred last summer which were because people are careless. (OG Test 1)

A. which were because people are careless

B. were caused by human carelessness

C. because people are careless

D. are because of human carelessness

E. happened from people being careless

主句的主语是 several。但是，根据基础篇对句子框架结构的讲解，我们发现，找到了主语之后，却找不到主句的谓语动词。句中的三个动词分别是三个由 that，which，because 引导的从句中的动词。由此，对应考点——不完整句。所以答题思路是，将主句的谓语动词改出来的选项就有可能正确。根据这一思路，这道题可能的选项分别是 B，D，E。E 选项可以最先排除，因为这里的 being 符合自杀词的条件。剩 B，D。原题中均是过去时态，所以 D 选项 are 的现在时态排除，这道题选 B。

以上就是两道长画线中将 run-on 句型和不完整句当题干来考的例题。由例题可以感觉到，做这一类题目时对句法结构的把握更为重要。句子结构了解清楚了题目就能迎刃而解。因此，接下来将为大家总结在 SAT 中，这一类考题中需要大家了解的结构细节。共有以下五点：

(1) 基本句型结构判断。首先，请判断以下结构的正误情况：

1) S + V + O，S + V + O

2) S + V + O；S + V + O

3) S + V + O；S + V + O

4) S + V + O，and S + V + O

5) S + V + O；but S + V + O

6) S + V + O，however，S + V + O

7) S + V + O；thus，S + V + O

8）S + V + O，in addition，S + V + O

思考过后，答案揭晓：

1）（F）S + V + O，S + V + O

2）（T）S + V + O；S + V + O

3）（T）S + V + O：S + V + O

4）（T）S + V + O，and S + V + O

5）（F）S + V + O；but S + V + O

6）（F）S + V + O，however，S + V + O

7）（T）S + V + O；thus，S + V + O

8）（F）S + V + O，in addition，S + V + O

判断这些句型结构的一个基本原则就是“一句话里有且只有一个谓语动词，如果想将几句话连成一句话说，则需要 $n-1$ 个连接词，n 是动词的个数”。

1）错，因为 1）句有两个动词，却没有连接词。

2），3）对，虽然这句话里有两个谓语动词，但是分号和冒号这两个符号是可以在句中当连接词用的。

4）对，虽然句中有两个动词，但是有一个我们都很熟悉的连接词 and。

5）错，因为句中有两个动词，但是却有两个连接词——but 和分号。这是不允许的。

6）错，句中有两个动词，没有连接词连接两句话。注意 however 是一个副词。

7）对，句中有两个动词，有分号连接。thus 是副词，所以句中连接词的个数刚好正确。

8）错，句中有两个动词，而没有连接词连接。in addition 是一个介宾短语。

由以上七个最基本的句型结构可以看出，有时即使记住了句法结构的基本原则，还是无法避免犯错。原因很简单，我们对基本的副词和连接词识别不清，这一点在 6）、7）、8）中体现得最为明显。因此为了能够保证句型结构分析无误，必须对常见的副词和连接词等进行一个详细梳理。

（2）常见连接词

1）and，but，because，though，although 等常见连接词。

2）各种引导从句的引导词，都有连接词的功能，例如：that，which，who。

3）where- 构成的复合词常用做连接词，例如，whereas，whereby。

4）看上去不像连接词，但有连接功能的三、二、一的单词组合。

三单词组合：at the time，by the time 均可以当连接词使用。

二单词组合：the + 时间名词，例如 the time，the day，the year。

一单词组合：immediately，instantly，directly。

5）看上去是两部分，却属于一个连接词，只能连接两句话。例如：

not only... but also

the more... the more

just as... so

not so much... as

（3）常见副词

1）以 ly 结尾的词，常常是副词。例如：consequently。注意，early 既可以是副词，也可以是形容词。

2）there-，here-构成的复合词常用做副词，例如，therefore，thereby。

3）however，hence，thus，then，also，nevertheless 都是副词。

（4）常见介词

1）despite 是介词，不可以用于连接句子。例如：

John failed in the exam，despite he works very hard.　　（F）

作为介词，despite 之后只能接名词，不可以接句子。固定表达有，despite the fact that...，注意这里的 that 引导的句子是 fact 的同位语从句，跟 despite 没有关系。与它用法相同的还有 in spite of。

2）in addition 是介宾短语，不可以连接两句话。

3）as a result 是介宾短语，不可以连接两句话。

（5）v-ed 是过去时态还是过去分词？

在分析句子时，定位动词是分析的第一步。因此，对动词有准确的把握是能分析正确句子的第一步。规则变形的动词过去时态和过去分词都是在动词后加-ed。而过去时态是动词，在句中仍然做谓语，过去分词是非谓语动词，在句中不能做谓语。我们将分为三个层次对两者的区分进行讲解。

1）S + V + O（主语 + 谓语 + 宾语）。我们先从最常见的主谓宾结构的动词入手，进行分析。请看例句：

① Bell invented the phone.

② The phone was invented by Bell.

对比这两个句子，里面都有 invented。很明显，第①句中的 invented 是过去时态，是谓语动词。第②句中 invented 是过去分词，不是谓语。因为在英语语法中，被动语态的结构要求是 be + 过去分词。

③ The phone invented by Bell makes our life better.

第③句中的 invented 是过去分词，因为，从桥梁作用的第②句中可以发现，第②句和第③句两个结构都是 invented by Bell.

此时，我们对比①，③两个句子。

观察两个 invented 后可以发现区分过去时态和过去分词的方法，

$$\text{v-ed}\begin{cases}\text{v-ed + 名词} & \text{过去时态，是谓语}\\ \text{v-ed + 介词} & \text{过去分词，不是谓语动词}\end{cases}$$

例 12-27

Ruben Blades，already certified as a lawyer in his native country of Panama，supported himself by singing salsa while pursuing an advanced degree in international law at Harvard University.（OG Test 1）

A. Blades，already certified as a lawyer

B. Blades，already being a certified lawyer

C. Blades，already certified for being a lawyer

D. Blades was already certified as a lawyer

E. Blades is certified as a lawyer already

分析句型结构，句中有一个 certified，一个 supported。根据对 v-ed 区分方法的讲解，我们需要分析这两个 v-ed 在句中都是什么成分。certified 后接一个做介词使用的 as，由此可知，certified 是过去分词，在句中不做谓语。supported 后接一个代词 himself，因此 supported 是谓语动词。因此，句中只有一个动词，句子结构正确。因此选项 A 正确。B，C 选项 being 自杀。D，E 使句子多了谓语动词。

2）S + V + O + O（主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语）。主谓双宾的结构是动词有加两个动词的能力。因为句式结构的不同，主谓双宾的结构和主谓宾结构对 v-ed 进行区分的方法有所差异，例如：

① We elected Obama the President.

② Obama was elected the President.

对比这两个句子，两句里面都有 elected。很明显，①句中的 elected 是过去时态，是谓语动词。②句中 elected 是过去分词，不是谓语。因为在英语语法中，对被动语态的结构要求是 be + 过去分词。但是我们发现，作为过去分词的 elected 后仍然有一个名词 the President。原因是，当及物动词由主动变被动时，接宾语的能力是减一的。在 1）的情况中，因为句子结构是 S + V + O，动词只接一个宾语，所以当变为被动时，过去分词后就接零个宾语。而在 S + V + O + O 的结构中，动词后接两个宾语，因此当动词变为被动后，过去分词后仍然可以接一个宾语。

③ Obama elected the President visited China.

这个结构中，不可以误判为句中有两个动词。需要注意，尽管 elected 后接了一个名词 the President，由于 elected 是接双宾的结构，这里的 elected 是一个过去分词，而不是谓语动词。因此，我们在第一种情况下总结出来的例子需要进一步充实：

v-ed { v-ed + n.　过去时态，是谓语（除去如 elected，named，called 等接双宾的动词）
　　 { v-ed + 介词　过去分词，不是谓语动词

例 12-28

Frequently on tour, a band called the Chieftains revered internationally as spirited performers of traditional Irish music. （06.01）

A. revered internationally as spirited performers

B. revered internationally and they are spirited performers

C. is revered internationally for its spirited performances

D. is revered internationally as giving spirited performances

E. are revered internationally as being spirited performers

分析句型结构，句子里有 called 和 revered。根据我们梳理的 v-ed 结构区分的方法可知，called 是一个接双宾的动词，其后虽然接的是一个名词 Chieftains，它仍然是过去分词。revered 后接介词 as，因此也是一个过去分词。由此可见，句中没有谓语动词。因此 A，B 选项排除。句子的主语是单数 band，因此 E 选项排除。只剩 C，D。D 选项 as giving spirited performances 不如 C 选项 for its spirited performances 逻辑通畅，所以选 C。

3）S + V（主语 + 谓语）

英语中也有很多动词之后是不能接任何东西的，我们称为不及物动词。例如：

① I waited for you.

② He arrived in New York.

由这两个例句可以看出，这里的 v-ed 后面虽然是介词，但是这些词仍然是过去时态。因此，我们将结构补充完整，

v-ed { v-ed + n.　过去时态，是谓语（除去如 elected，named，called 等接双宾的动词）
　　 { v-ed + 介词　过去分词，不是谓语动词（除去如 arrived，referred 等不及物动词）

例 12-29

At the conclusion of the novel *The Great Gatsby*, Nick Carraway, a young Midwesterner recently arrived to (A) New York, moodily (B) watches (C) the blinking green light at the tip of (D) Long Island. No error (E) (07.01)

分析句型结构，句中有两个动词，分别是 arrived 和 watches。arrived 后虽有介词 to，仍然是一个动词过去时态。而没有任何用于连接两个句子的连接词，故结构错。同时，英语中没有 arrived to 的搭配。因此这道题选 A。

第 13 讲　平 行 结 构

平行结构在长画线（IS）和短画线（ISE）中的考法一致。英语是重结构的语言，更喜欢结构上的平衡一致。平行结构就是在这个指导思想下产生的。它主要是指，在一些如 and，but 等平行并列词前后，结构需要一致。

本讲内容安排如下：

13.1　and，but，not only... but also，or 等前后结构要一致

13.2　比较结构

13.3　介词不可以省略，常考介词是 in

13.4　To do is to do
　　Doing is doing

自测题：

1. According to some critics, the title character of the Greek tragedy *Oedipus Rex* saw himself (A) as the savior (B) of his people and

believing erroneously that he could do no wrong. No error (OG Test 2)
C D E

2. Acquaintances of Alexei have commented that he is at once annoying because of his unpredictability but his imagination is still a delight. (OG Test 1)

A. but his imagination is still a delight.
B. although he is delightfully imaginative
C. and he is delightful in his imagination too
D. while being imaginative and they are delighted
E. and delightful because of his imagination

3. All species of sea turtles are endangered because of overharvesting of adults, their eggs being disturbed, and destruction of nesting habitats. (OG Test 1)

A. of overharvesting of adults, their eggs being disturbed, and destruction of nesting habitats
B. of the adults being overharvested, their eggs disturbed, and destroying nesting habitats
C. the overharvesting of adults, disturbance of their eggs, and destruction of nesting habitats
D. the adults are overharvested, their eggs are disturbed, and their nesting habitats are destroyed
E. being overharvested as adults, their eggs being disturbed, and destruction of nesting habitats

4. It is far easier to ride a bicycle than explaining in words exactly how
A B C
a bicycle is ridden. No error (OG Test 4)
D E

5. There is probably no story more dramatic than baseball's great
A B C D
hitter and right fielder, Hank Aaron. No error (OG Test 1)
E

6. Because they painted scenes of life as ordinary people lived it,
A B
rather than scenes from myths, many nineteenth-century American
C
artists differed from earlier times. No error (OG Test 6)
D E

7. A mixture of jazz and classical idioms, the music of Gershiwin was more innovative than most of his contemporaries. (OG Test 2)

A. than most of his contemporaries
B. than most of his contemporaries were
C. than were most of his contemporaries
D. than that of most of his contemporaries

E. than most of his contemporaries, as far as music is concerned

8. The famous battle depicted in the film *Braveheart* took place in northern England, and many people assume that it was the Scottish Highlands. (OG Test 1)

A. and many people assume that it was

B. many people assuming

C. but many people assume it to be

D. not what many people assume

E. not, as many people assume, in

9. In a recent year, more tourists from the United States visited museums in Great Britain than Canada. (OG Test 4)

A. Canada

B. Canada did

C. compared to Canada's

D. Canadian ones

E. in Canada

10. Commuters in the 1990s encountered more traffic delays than the 1970s and 1980s. (09.01)

A. than

B. than did

C. than the traffic problems of

D. than with the commuters in

E. than commuters did in

11. Twice as many bird species inhabit Ecuador as in North America. (OG Test 3)

A. as in

B. as inhabit

C. instead of in

D. when compared to

E. than

12. To insist that a poem means whatever one (A) wants it (B) to mean is often ignoring (C) the intention and even (D) the words of the poet. No error (E) (07.10)

13. To stand in (A) Persepolis in modern Iran and look out, as Darius the First must have done (B), at the immense sweep of fields and mountains (C) is to

grasp the vastness of the ancient Persian Empire. No error (08. 10)
D E

13.1 and, but, not only... but also, or 等前后结构要一致

例 13-1

According to some critics, the title character of the Greek tragedy *Oedipus Rex* saw himself (A) as the savior (B) of his people and believing (C) erroneously that he could do (D) no wrong. No error (E) (OG Test 2)

通过分析结构，我们看到题目中的信号词 and，根据平行结构考点一，and 前后结构要一致，and 前是一句话，所以 and 后也需要用一句话，而不是 believing 这种非谓语结构，所以选 C。

其中，以下两个结构，

to do and/or to do

to do and/or do

均是正确表达，to do and do 是 and 后的 to do 不定式符号 to 的省略。

同时，在语义表达上，and 是可以表示轻微转折的。当看出题目在明确的考查平行结构时，一定要找结构最平行一致的选项来做正确答案。

例 13-2

Acquaintances of Alexei have commented that he is at once annoying because of his unpredictability but his imagination is still a delight. (OG Test 1)

A. but his imagination is still a delight.

B. although he is delightfully imaginative

C. and he is delightful in his imagination too

D. while being imaginative and they are delighted

E. and delightful because of his imagination

这道题目根据意思分析，有前后的转折关系。但是如果按照这一思路去找答案，很容易掉到误区里。我们在没画线的区域看到了形容词 + because of + 名词的结构。在选项中，看到了平行结构的指示词 but 和 and，but 的表达。A 选项虽然在语义上没有问题，但是前后结构不平行一致，所以不能选。接下来看 E 选项，E 也是形容词 + because of + 名词的表达，完全平行一致。虽然由 and 连接，但是 and 有轻微转折，因此在语义上同样说得通畅，因此选 E。

考生仍然需要注意的一点是，and 这个连接词的使用较为特殊，它可以出现在“句子，句子 and 句子”的结构中，请看例题：

例 13-3

All species of sea turtles are endangered because of overharvesting of adults, their eggs being disturbed, and destruction of nesting habitats. (OG Test 1)

A. of overharvesting of adults, their eggs being disturbed, and destruction of nesting habitats

B. of the adults being overharvested, their eggs disturbed, and destroying nesting habitats

C. the overharvesting of adults, disturbance of their eggs, and destruction of nesting habitats

D. the adults are overharvested, their eggs are disturbed, and their nesting habitats are destroyed

E. being overharvested as adults, their eggs being disturbed, and destruction of nesting habitats

分析句子结构，主语是 all species，动词是 are，表语是 endangered，后接 because 连接的结构。在画线的句中看到平行并列结构的信号词 and。首先 E 选项 being 自杀排除。另外，根据 SAT 的做题方法，有 because 不考虑 because of，因此 A，B 选项放后。根据 and 的平行结构，选 D。而 D 选项，就是“句子，句子 and”句子的结构。

13.2 比较结构

比较结构放在平行结构这个考点中，也要求结构前后的平衡一致，

例 13-4

It is far easier to ride a bicycle than explaining in words exactly how
A B C
a bicycle is ridden. No error (OG Test 4)
D E

than 前后结构也需要平行，前面是 to ride，后面不能是 explaining。因此选 B。

在 SAT 语法中大量出现的比较结构题目，主要是要判断中心是否一致。

例 13-5

There is probably no story more dramatic than baseball's great
A B C D
hitter and right fielder, Hank Aaron. No error (OG Test 1)
E

分析句型结构可知，比较中心是 story 和后面的 baseball's great hitter and right fielder，Hank Aaron 这个人。前后比较中心不一致，所以 D 错。

例 13-6

Because they painted scenes of life as ordinary people lived it,
A B
rather than scenes from myths, many nineteenth-century American
C
artists differed from earlier times. No error (OG Test 6)
D E

分析句型结构可知，主句是 many nineteenth-century American artists differed from earlier times. 比较结构比较的中心是 artists 和 earlier times，两者不同类，不可比较，因此选 D。

由此可见，比较结构的考点，主要出现在前后有比较含义的句子中，除了大家熟悉的 than 这种标准的比较句以外，SAT 中还考过 as well as，differ，compare 等。这类题目中，需要注意比较的前后中心一定是同类可比的对象即可。

请判断下列句子的正误：

A. I can swim as well as you.

B. I can swim as well as you can.

C. I can swim as well as can you.

根据比较结构，比较中心要一致这个原则，我们看出，A，B，C 三句的比较中心是 I 和 you。比较中心一致，因此这三句话全对。而动词在比较结构中不是关注的要点，可前可后，亦可省略。

比较结构的题目，切忌翻译句子来进行判断。中国学生非常容易进行思维发散，把自己以为的意思理解成句子实质的意思。比如，A，B，C 三个例句，很多学生会理解成这是对游泳的比较，而全然不顾句子的本来面貌，也会因为这个误区，将句子的正误情况判断错误。如果是要表现对游泳能力的比较，句子应该写成，

My swimming ability is as well as yours.

而如果是对“游泳”这一动作的比较，则句子会变成 I can swim faster than I run.

再一次验证了，SAT 语法的做题，一定要用抓结构的方法读题，用对考点的方法选答案。

例 13-7

A mixture of jazz and classical idioms, the music of Gershiwin was more innovative than most of his contemporaries. (OG Test 2)

A. than most of his contemporaries

B. than most of his contemporaries were

C. than were most of his contemporaries

D. than that of most of his contemporaries

E. than most of his contemporaries, as far as music is concerned

根据上面讲过的原则，可以看出 A，B，C 三个选项属于同类选项，因此全都删除。只剩 D，E。分析句型结构可知，比较的中心是 music，than 后的中心必须也是 music，因此只能选 D，由 that of 来代指 music。

13.3 介词不可以省略，常考介词是 in

这是一个很好的做题提示词，可以帮助一眼盯答案。

例 13-8

The famous battle depicted in the film *Braveheart* took place in northern England, and many

people assume that it was the Scottish Highlands. (OG Test 1)

A. and many people assume that it was

B. many people assuming

C. but many people assume it to be

D. not what many people assume

E. not, as many people assume, in

虽然这道题目看上去稍显复杂，但是根据介词不可以省略的原则，还是非常容易选出正确答案的。我们看到画线之前的句子中是 in northern England，因此之后的句子也应该是 in the Scottish Highlands，符合这一思路的选项只有 E。

例 13-9

In a recent year, more tourists from the United States visited museums in Great Britain than Canada. (OG Test 4)

A. Canada

B. Canada did

C. compared to Canada's

D. Canadian ones

E. in Canada

根据介词不可以省略的原则，前面有 in Great Britain，后面不可以省略介词 in，所以一眼盯答案，选 E。

例 13-10

Commuters in the 1990s encountered more traffic delays than the 1970s and 1980s. (09.01)

A. than

B. than did

C. than the traffic problems of

D. than with the commuters in

E. than commuters did in

观察选项，看到选项中有 in 出现，回找题目，主句的部分是 in the 1990s，因此介词不可以省略，只能从 D，E 选项中选择。D 选项多一个 with 介词，错误。这道题选 E。

当然，平行结构中介词不可省的思路不但要学会顺着用，还要学会逆向思维。

例 13-11：

Twice as many bird species inhabit Ecuador as in North America. (OG Test 3)

A. as in

B. as inhabit

C. instead of in

D. when compared to

E. than

首先，as. . . as 是固定搭配。另外，介词不可以省略，前有介词，后有介词。反过来说，前面未画线部分没有介词，后面也不需要介词。因此这道题选 B。

从句法结构上讲，当发现句子在比较主语、宾语、表语的主干结构时，需要关注比较中心要一致。当发现句子在比较状语或定语时，比较前后的介词不可以省略。对于这一点，大家可以在做题中慢慢体会。

13.4 To do is to do/Doing is doing

这个表达虽然不能算是完全意义上的平行结构，但是由于要求结构上的平衡一致，也归纳到平行结构中。但是在真正的考题中，绝对不会写的看上去如此简单，或者犯一个一眼看得出来的错误，比如直接写成 to do is doing 或者 doing is to do 这种错误。出题的方法往往是用一堆修饰限制语来反复迷惑、干扰视线。因此，反复强调的做题思路一定要倍加重视——抓结构、对考点。

例 13-12

To insist that a poem means whatever one wants it to mean is
A B

often ignoring the intention and even the words of the poet.
C D

No error (07. 10)
E

分析句型结构，主语是 to insist，而在 insist 后放了一长串 insist 的宾语从句 that a poem means whatever one wants it to mean。系动词是 is，表语是 ignoring，这时我们发现了句子结构是 to insist is ignoring，结构错，因此选 C。

例 13-13

To stand in Persepolis in modern Iran and look out, as Darius the First
A

must have done, at the immense sweep of fields and mountains is to
B C

grasp the vastness of the ancient Persian Empire. No error (08. 10)
D E

句子主干 to stand in. . . and look out. . . is to grasp. . . 。和例 13-12 的出题套路完全一致，都是在句中放置一堆修饰限制语用来干扰分析视线。这道题选 E。

第 14 讲　逻 辑 主 语

逻辑主语是 SAT 中的必考考点，而此类题目出题套路很明显，掌握方法后能在短时间内迅速锁定正确答案。2012 年的 SAT 语法真题中这一考点的考题数量有上升趋势。一般而言，逻辑主语的题目在对其考点掌握清楚的情况下，可以用点读法做题，即，只需要看与逻辑主语相关的部分，句子的其他部分可以直接忽略。不但能提高做题的正确率，还可以大大缩减解题时间。

本讲内容安排如下：

14.1　非谓语的逻辑主语结构

14.2　名词的逻辑主语结构

14.3　形容词的逻辑主语结构

14.4　非谓语、名词、形容词的综合版的逻辑主语结构

自测题：

1. Carried by the strong, dry winds of the stratosphere, the 1980 eruption of Mount Saint Helens caused dust that crossed the United States in three days and circled the globe in two weeks. (OG Test 1)

A. the 1980 eruption of Mount Saint Helens caused dust that
B. Mount Saint Helens' eruption in 1980 caused dust that
C. dust from the 1980 eruption of Mount Saint Helens
D. dust from the 1980 eruption of Mount Saint Helens that
E. there was dust from the 1980 eruption of Mount Saint Helens and it

2. Traveling through Yosemite, the scenery of waterfalls and granite peaks, which we photographed, was beautiful. (OG Test 2)

A. the scenery of waterfalls and granite peaks, which we photographed, was beautiful
B. the waterfalls and granite peaks were the beautiful scenery we photographed
C. we photographed the beautiful scenery of waterfalls and granite peaks
D. we photographed the scenery of waterfalls and granite peaks, being beautiful
E. what we photographed was the beautiful scenery of waterfalls and granite peaks

3. After receiving a degree in agriculture from Iowa State Agricultural and Mechanical College, a faculty position at the college was accepted by George Washington Carver, and he took charge of the college green houses. (11.01)

A. a faculty position at the college was accepted by George Washington Carver, and he took
B. a faculty position was accepted by George Washington Carver at the college, he took

C. George Washington Carver accepted a faculty position at the college and took

D. George Washington Carver, accepting a position on the faculty at the college, taking

E. George Washington Carver, who accepted a faculty position at the college and took

4. Quincy took Dan to Derek's home for a visit (A), never imagining (B) that five years would pass (C) before seeing (D) Derek again. No error (E) (08.05)

5. During the 1980's the income gap between the richest and the poorest Americans widened significantly, while continuing to expand in the 1990's. (OG Test 8)

A. significantly, while continuing to expand

B. significantly, and it continued to expand

C. significantly with continuing expansion

D. significantly, it continued expanding

E. significantly, continuing expanding

6. An artist who explores Mexican cultural themes, the art of Maria Elena is world renowned. (OG Test 2)

A. An artist who explores Mexican cultural themes, the art of Maria Elena is world renowned.

B. To explore Mexican cultural themes, the work of artist Maria Elena is world-renowned art.

C. Artist Maria Elena has explored Mexican cultural themes, the art of which is world renowned.

D. An artist who has explored Mexican cultural themes, Maria Elena's art is world renowned.

E. Maria Elena is a world-renowned artist whose art explores Mexican cultural themes.

7. Of all the states represented at the conference, the governor of Missouri was the only one to present plans for enforcing the new regulations. (OG Test 6)

A. the governor of Missouri was the only one to present

B. making the governor from Missouri the only one to present

C. Missouri's governor only presented

D. Missouri's governor presented the only

E. Missouri was the only one whose governor presented

8. Norwegian writer Sigrid Undset is like (A) the novelist Sir Walter Scott in (B) her use of historical backgrounds, but unlike his books (C), she dwells on the psychological aspects (D) of her characters. No error (E)

9. My roommate, a drama major, claimed that (A) Ibsen's plays, unlike Ionesco (B), are

totally conventional in their style. No error (06.05)
C D E

10. Mindful of the growing popularity of backyard compost piles among home gardeners, experts warn that adding meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost will attract vermin. (07.10)

A. experts warn that adding meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost will

B. adding meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost, this is what experts warn will

C. and with warnings from experts that adding meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost will

D. warnings from experts concerning the addition of meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost will

E. experts warning that adding meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost would

11. Ms. Kovak proudly displayed her research group's most ingenious
A B
invention, a vacuum cleaner that empties its own dust bag when
C
pressing a button. No error (OG Test 3)
D E

12. When creating collections of new clothing, styles of the past have often influenced contemporary fashion designers. (11.05)

A. styles of the past have often influenced contemporary fashion designers

B. styles of the past often have an influence on contemporary fashion designers

C. styles of the past often influence contemporary fashion designers

D. contemporary fashion designers have often been influenced from styles of the past

E. contemporary fashion designers are often influenced by styles of the past

14.1 非谓语的逻辑主语结构

to do/doing/done, S V O 升级版 by doing/after doing/despite doing/if done, S V O

在结构篇，我们已经提到了，非谓语不是谓语动词，是动词的各种变形：to do, doing,done。经过变形后的动词，已经没有做谓语的功能，但是有一点是不变的——动词的本性，即任何动作都不可能凭空蹦出来，都需要一个动作的发出者，我们常称为主语。而 to do，S + V + O；doing，S + V + O；done，S + V + O 这些表达中，在 to do/ doing/done 之前，没有紧挨的名词来做这些非谓语的动作发出者，这是什么原因呢？

英语喜欢简洁明了。在这些结构中，如果非谓语的主语和主句的主语（S）一致的情况下，就选择将这部分的主语省略，使英文表达更加简单。换句话说，只要表达成 to do/ doing/ done，S + V + O 的形式，就是主语一致而省略了非谓语部分的主语。同理，当非谓语部分的主语和主句的主语不一致的时候，非谓语部分的主语就不能省略，这种情况下，

构成独立主格的情况，例如：

Weather permitting，I'll go shopping.

非谓语 permitting 的主语不是 I，所以加上了自己的主语 weather，即构成了独立主格结构。

例 14-1

Carried by the strong，dry winds of the stratosphere，the 1980 eruption of Mount Saint Helens caused dust that crossed the United States in three days and circled the globe in two weeks.（OG Test 1）

A. the 1980 eruption of Mount Saint Helens caused dust that

B. Mount Saint Helens' eruption in 1980 caused dust that

C. dust from the 1980 eruption of Mount Saint Helens

D. dust from the 1980 eruption of Mount Saint Helens that

E. there was dust from the 1980 eruption of Mount Saint Helens and it

这类题目的做题误区是反复从头至尾的读题，渴望在反复读题中找到答题灵感。逻辑主语这类的题目往往都很长，如果把时间花费在读懂题目上，一定是最费力不讨好的做题方法。这样做一是浪费时间，二是读太多信息会扰乱思路。正确的做题思路是，点读法——只看有用信息进行排查。

> 逻辑主语的题目可以归到技巧题一类。只要将逻辑主语会出现的各种结构记忆清楚，不需要和其他题目一样用分析句子结构的方法来读题。只需要抓取有用信息即可，最大限度的节省做题时间。

当我们看到题目的开头是 carried by... 打头，应该第一时间反应出这是逻辑主语考点——done，S + V + O——要求 done 的主语和主句的主语（S）一致。根据这个思路，我们只需要读完 carried by the strong dry winds 的表意主体部分，直接对应主句主语即可。A 选项主语是 eruption，与 carried by... 不搭配，排除。B 选项的主语是 eruption，与 carried by... 不搭配，排除。E 选项的主语是 there 指代关系是谁不知道，更无法与 carried by... 搭配，排除。只剩下 C，D 两个以 dust 为主语的选项可选。对比 C，D 两个选项，D 选项多一个 that，造成主句是一个无谓语动词的不完整句，所以答案选 C。

例 14-2

Traveling through Yosemite，the scenery of waterfalls and granite peaks，which we photographed，was beautiful.（OG Test 2）

A. the scenery of waterfalls and granite peaks，which we photographed，was beautiful

B. the waterfalls and granite peaks were the beautiful scenery we photographed

C. we photographed the beautiful scenery of waterfalls and granite peaks

D. we photographed the scenery of waterfalls and granite peaks，being beautiful

E. what we photographed was the beautiful scenery of waterfalls and granite peaks

同样用点读法读题——看到 doing 放句首，考虑逻辑主语考点，看每个选项的主语，哪个与 doing 这个动作搭配，只读有用信息，无用信息直接略过。

由此，迅速排除 A，B，E，剩 C，D。对比两个选项，D 选项 being 自杀，因此选 C。

除了以上常规考法，SAT 还常常考非谓语部分的升级版本，即，

by doing/ after doing/ before doing/despite doing/ if done，S + V + O

例 14-3

After receiving a degree in agriculture from Iowa State Agricultural and Mechanical College, a faculty position at the college was accepted by George Washington Carver, and he took charge of the college green houses. (11.01)

A. a faculty position at the college was accepted by George Washington Carver, and he took

B. a faculty position was accepted by George Washington Carver at the college, he took

C. George Washington Carver accepted a faculty position at the college and took

D. George Washington Carver, accepting a position on the faculty at the college, taking

E. George Washington Carver, who accepted a faculty position at the college and took

由 After receiving... 我们想到逻辑主语考点，对应五个选项的主语，看哪个可以主动地 receive。迅速排除 A，B，因为 position 没法主动接受。剩 C，D，E。而 D，E 选项都不是完整句，主句缺谓语动词，排除。这道题选 E。

在 SAT 中，并不是所有的非谓语类的逻辑主语题目都是明显地写在题首，有时会做一些变形。

例 14-4

Quincy took Dan to Derek's home for a visit (A), never imagining (B) that five years would pass (C) before seeing (D) Derek again. No error (E) (08.05)

这道 2008 年的真题属于一道干扰性较大的难题。但是，只要能熟练记得非谓语的逻辑主语考点，还是比较容易选出的。分析句型结构，主句主语是 Quincy，谓语是 took，状语是现在分词 never imagining。根据 doing，S + V + O 的升级版结构，两者主语一致原则，可知 B 选项正确。继续分析结构，imagining 后跟了由 that 引导的宾语从句，主语 five years，动词 would pass，状语 before seeing...。这里又出现一个 doing，S + V + O 的升级版情况，要求两者主语一致。根据这个原则，我们可知 seeing 的主语在这句话中应该是 five years。根据常识，five years 显然无法主动去 see，所以逻辑主语搭配错误，因此答案是 D。

在做这类逻辑主语题目时，还需要了解现在分词，表主动，表进行。而进行是指现在分词的动作时间与主句动词的时间一致。

例 14-5

During the 1980's the income gap between the richest and the poorest Americans widened significantly, while continuing to expand in the 1990's. (OG Test 8)

A. significantly, while continuing to expand

B. significantly, and it continued to expand

C. significantly with continuing expansion

D. significantly, it continued expanding

E. significantly, continuing expanding

根据 continue 的固定搭配，可以直接排除 C，D，E 选项。剩 A，B。A 选项，while continuing 的结构，现在分词表主动，表进行。continuing 需要与主句的动词发生时间一致。而主句部分的时间状语是 1980's，while 状语部分的时间是 1990's。因此 A 选项不正确。只能选 B。B 选项有代词 it。在代词这一考点中为大家讲解过，在长画线中，有代词的选项往往要放到最后才能选，除非其他没有代词的选项都错的情况下。本题就是这样的一个例子。

14.2 名词的逻辑主语结构

n.，S + V + O

升级版

of/ like/ unlike/ as + n.，S + V + O

"n.，S + V + O"这个结构比较好理解，该名词（n.）是主句的主语（S）的同位语，因此当然需要两者范畴一致。

例 14-6

An artist who explores Mexican cultural themes, the art of Maria Elena is world renowned. (OG Test 2)

A. An artist who explores Mexican cultural themes, the art of Maria Elena is world renowned.

B. To explore Mexican cultural themes, the work of artist Maria Elena is world-renowned art.

C. Artist Maria Elena has explored Mexican cultural themes, the art of which is world renowned.

D. An artist who has explored Mexican cultural themes, Maria Elena's art is world renowned.

E. Maria Elena is a world-renowned artist whose art explores Mexican cultural themes.

分析句型结构可知，这道题的结构是——n.，S + V + O。An artist...，the art of Maria Elena is... 由逻辑主语的考点知道，这里的主语（n.）和主句的主语（S）不一致，所以 A 错。B 选项，to explore...，the work... is...，逻辑主语错误，排除。C 选项，artist Maria Elena has explored...，the art of which... 是由 which 引导的定语从句，虽然句子结构正确，但 which 偷换概念，故排除。D 选项，an artist...，art is...，逻辑主语错误，排除。E 选项正确。

例 14-7

Of all the states represented at the conference, the governor of Missouri was the only one to present plans for enforcing the new regulations. (OG Test 6)

A. the governor of Missouri was the only one to present

B. making the governor from Missouri the only one to present

C. Missouri's governor only presented

D. Missouri's governor presented the only

E. Missouri was the only one whose governor presented

由逻辑主语的名词升级版本可知，of + n.，S + V + O，名词需要与主句的主语（S）同类。题目中，of + states，the governor was...，看出 states 和 the governor 不同类，所以错

误，据此，排除 A，C，D。B 选项，不完整句。选 E。E 中 states 和主语 Missouri 同类。

例 14-8

Norwegian writer Sigrid Undset is like (A) the novelist Sir Walter Scott in (B) her use of historical backgrounds, but unlike his books (C), she dwells on the psychological aspects (D) of her characters. No error (E)

分析句子结构，主语是 Sigrid Undset，系动词是 is，表语是 like the novelist Sir Walter Scott，后接由 but 引导的另一个并列句。句子主语是 she，动词是 dwells，动词和连接词的个数无误。but 的后半句，是一个逻辑主语结构，unlike + n.，S + V + O，此处的 n. 和 S 必须属于同一范畴。而题目中，unlike 后面的名词 his books 和句子的主语 she，不同类，无法可比。因此这道题目选 C。

例 14-9

My roommate, a drama major, claimed that (A) Ibsen's plays, unlike Ionesco (B), are totally conventional (C) in their (D) style. No error (E) (06.05)

主句主语是 my roommate，动词是 claimed，后接由 that 引导的宾语从句。从句主语 Ibsen's plays，动词是 are。单复数对应正确。B 选项，是逻辑主语中 unlike + n.，S + V + O 的结构，要求 n. 和 S 同类。unlike 后接的是一个人，而主句主语是 Ibsen's plays，两者不同类，B 选项错。

14.3 形容词的逻辑主语结构

adj.，S + V + O

这类逻辑主语的考法在 SAT 中出现较少。但是规则和非谓语有些相似。原来的句子应该是 S be adj.；S + V + O. 因为形容词的主语（S）和主句的主语（S）一致，所以省略了这个在辅助结构上的主语。而形容词前面的系动词是可以推出来的，因此也一并省略了。在这种结构中，需要注意的是形容词一定是可以来修饰主语（S）的。

例 14-10

Mindful of the growing popularity of backyard compost piles among home gardeners, experts warn that adding meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost will attract vermin. (07.10)

A. experts warn that adding meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost will

B. adding meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost, this is what experts warn will

C. and with warnings from experts that adding meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost will

D. warnings from experts concerning the addition of meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost will

E. experts warning that adding meat, dairy products, or cooking grease to compost would

从结构上来看，这是 adj.，S + V + O 的逻辑主语结构，Mindful...，experts warn...。因此，adj. 要能修饰主句的主语（S）。选项 A，mindful 可以修饰 experts，因此正确。B 选项，this 自杀，排除。C 选项，找不到主句主语，排除。D 选项，warnings 无法 mindful，故排除。E 选项，主句没有谓语动词，排除。

14.4 非谓语、名词、形容词的综合版的逻辑主语结构

When
While
Although } + doing/done/n./adj.，S + V + O
Thought

例 14-11

Ms. Kovak proudly displayed her research group's most ingenious invention, a vacuum cleaner that empties its own dust bag when pressing a button. No error (OG Test 3)

A B C D E

分析句型结构，主语是 Ms. Kovak，谓语是 displayed，宾语是 invention，同位语是 a vacuum cleaner，同位语后跟了一个修饰 vacuum cleaner 的定语从句，主语 that 代的就是 vacuum cleaner，动词 empties，宾语 dust bag，状语 when pressing a button。

结构分析到这里，我们看到了熟悉的结构，S + V + O，when doing。这个结构中要求逻辑主语一致，即 doing 的主语就是此结构中的 S。根据这个思路，我们看出，这里 pressing 的主语是 vacuum cleaner。而根据常识，一个真空吸尘器是无法主动自己按自己一下然后开始排空垃圾的。所以选 D。

例 14-12

When creating collections of new clothing, styles of the past have often influenced contemporary fashion designers. (11.05)

A. styles of the past have often influenced contemporary fashion designers

B. styles of the past often have an influence on contemporary fashion designers

C. styles of the past often influence contemporary fashion designers

D. contemporary fashion designers have often been influenced from styles of the past

E. contemporary fashion designers are often influenced by styles of the past

本题是 when doing，S + V + O 的逻辑主语结构，要求 creating 的主语与主句主语一致。因此，A，B，C 选项排除。剩 D，E。be influenced 后的搭配应该是 by，因此本题选 E。

第 15 讲　形容词和副词

形容词和副词这一考点在每次考试中的考查相对较少，但是属于必考考点。在这类题目里，有一个考试难点——形近词混淆。形近词混淆不是每次考试都会出现，出题频率较低，但是迷惑性极强。这一考点需要理解句意后再做题目。

本讲内容安排如下：

15.1　形容词和副词修饰关系错误

15.2　比较级和最高级错误

15.3　形近词混淆

自测题：

1. Because our casserole was smelling surprisingly badly (A) as it baked, the food science teacher came over to ask us what (B) we had put (C) in it (D). No error (E) (OG Test 1)

2. Coffee tastes bitterly (A) and gives off a burned (B) smell if it is overheated (C) or brewed for too long (D). No error (E) (11.01)

3. According to (A) educational statistics, the average age of college students has risen (B) quite noticeable (C) over the past (D) 25 years. No error (E) (OG Test 1)

4. Lost for many years (A) and presumed stolen (B), the portrait of the nineteenth-century writer had been (C) stored inadvertent (D) in the museum basements. No error (E) (08.05)

5. The research study reveals (A) startling proof of a constant (B) changing seafloor that comprises (C) the major part of (D) the underwater landscape.

No error (OG Test 4)
E

6. Not many authors have described the effects of environmental
A　　B
pollution as effective as Rachel Carson, whose work is still a model for
C　　D
nature writers. No error (06.01)
E

7. Just how critical an improved balance of trade is to a healthy
A　　B
economy has never been more clearer than it is now. No error (OG Test 5)
C　　D　　E

8. No one is more sorrier than me that you missed the awards ceremony. (OG Test 6)

A. more sorrier than me
B. sorrier than I
C. more sorry like myself
D. as sorry like I am
E. sorrier but me

9. If properly cared for, a hundred-year-old violin will produce a more fuller
A　　B　　C
sound than it did when it was first made. No error (08.05)
D　　E

10. Lions and tigers may be identical in size, but the tiger is the fiercer
A　　B　　C
animal and the lion the strongest. No error (OG Test 5)
D　　E

11. Of three common approaches to writing music, composers
A
generally seem to find instrumental improvisation the more congenial.
B　　C　　D
No error (07.10)
E

12. Of the more than 50 entries in the high school science fair, Sarah's
A　　B
project was declared more innovative by the panel of six judges.
C　　D
No error (10.01)
E

13. Of the five films that Phuong saw during the film festival, the last was unquestionably the more enjoyable. No error (11.05)
A B C D E

14. Though far less innovative as a composer of vocal and instrumental music, George Philipp Telemann was the most prolific of either Johann Sebastian Bach or George Frideric Handel. No error (09.01)
A B C D E

15. The acoustics of the ancient Greek theater at Epidaurus are so good that an actor's words, even when whispered, are auditory to those sitting in the last row. No error (09.10)
A B C D E

16. For any mayor of a vast metropolitan area, an understanding of current issues in all districts is not only desirous but also vital. No error (08.01)
A B C D E

17. Mary Whiton Calkins was an imminent psychologist and philosopher whose research focused on such topics as memory, consciousness, and dreams. No error (12.01)
A B C D E

15.1 形容词和副词修饰关系错误

(1) 形容词修饰关系

形容词 + 名词

系动词 (be/smell/taste/feel/look/get/turn/become) + 形容词

(2) 副词修饰关系

副词 + 形容词/动词

例 15-1

Because our casserole was smelling surprisingly badly as it baked,
A

the food science teacher came over to ask us what we had put in it.
B　C　D

No error (OG Test 1)
E

分析句型结构，because 从句中的主语是 casserole，系动词是 smell。表语部分是 surprisingly badly。根据基础篇的句子框架结构可知，表语部分的常见词性是名词、代词、形容词、介宾短语。而在这个句子中，我们找不到可以做表语的部分，所以句子结构不完整，选 A。因此，需要把 surprisingly badly 改为 surprisingly bad。在 SAT 语法中，对这种系动词和表语的结构常有考查。

例 15-2

Coffee tastes bitterly and gives off a burned smell if it is overheated or brewed
A　B　C

for too long. No error (11.01)
D　E

句中主语是 coffee，系动词是 taste，表语是 bitterly。系表结构有误，表语部分是形容词而不是副词。因此，选项 A 的 bitterly 需要改成形容词 bitter。

> 需要注意的是，感官动词用做系动词时，有时候也有相应的词性转换。来看例句：
>
> You look tired.（look 是系动词，后跟形容词 tired）
>
> He looked angrily at Tom.（look 是动词，是 look at 的固定搭配）
>
> 区分的感官动词和实意动词一般可以用语义来检验。当动词是感官动词时，一般都可以翻译成“……起来”。比如例句中，look tired 可以翻译成看起来很累。而 looked angrily at 无法翻译成“看起来”，是一个常见动词词组 look at，表示“看”。

在 SAT 语法中，除了考系表结构的修饰关系外，还会考查一般情况。

例 15-3

According to educational statistics, the average age of college
A

students has risen quite noticeable over the past 25 years.
B　C　D

No error (OG Test 1)
E

句子的主语是 age，谓语是 has risen，后面由 quite noticeable 修饰。单看 C 选项的搭配没有任何问题，因为副词 quite 修饰形容词 noticeable。但是，由基本的修饰关系可知，形容词出现时要么前面有系动词，要么后面有直接修饰的名词，否则句中没有形容词的位置。在这句话中，noticeable 前面没有与之对应的系动词，后面没有它来修饰的名词，因此，这句话中没有形容词 noticeable 的位置。应该将 noticeable 改成 noticeably，两个副词连

用修饰前面的动词 has risen，所以选 C。

例 15-4

Lost for many years and presumed stolen, the portrait of the nineteenth-century writer
A B

had been stored inadvertent in the museum basements. No error (08.05)
C D E

分析句子结构，主语是 the portrait，谓语是 had been stored。D 选项的 inadvertent 是一个形容词，无法修饰前边的动词，因此修饰关系有误。应该改成 inadvertently。

在 SAT 语法中，除了较明显的修饰错误，还有一些不是非常容易看出来的题目。

例 15-5

The research study reveals startling proof of a constant changing
A B

seafloor that comprises the major part of the underwater landscape.
C D

No error (OG Test 4)
E

分析句子结构，主语是 the research study，动词是 reveals，宾语是 proof。宾语后一个介宾结构做后置定语的修饰。注意 constant changing seafloor，根据结构篇对非谓语的讲解，doing 这类非谓语即可以是动名词，也可以是现在分词。而动名词的性质是名词性质，现在分词是形容词或副词性质。这两类非谓语都可以用做定语，但是性质不同，例如：

reading room （动名词）

quarreling couple （现在分词）

如果修饰词和名词的关系是表示 be used for doing sth.（被用作干什么）时，修饰词就是动名词，是名词性质。如果修饰词和名词的关系是逻辑主谓关系时，修饰词就是现在分词，是形容词性质。

同理进行分析，changing seafloor，两者有逻辑主谓关系，所以 changing 是现在分词，是形容词性质。由此可见，constant changing seafloor 错误，应该改成 constantly。所以这道题选 B。

例 15-6

Not many authors have described the effects of environmental
A B

pollution as effective as Rachel Carson, whose work is still a model for
C D

nature writers. No error (06.01)
E

分析句型结构，主语是 authors，动词是 have described，宾语是 the effects，as effective as 做状语。需要注意的是 as... as 中间是形容词、副词都可以放，具体放什么要根据句子要求。这里 as... as 修饰 have described，所以中间应该放副词。所以选 C。

以上是形容词和副词修饰关系错的题目，是形容词 & 副词考点中考查最多的一类题

目。需要理清形容词和副词的修饰关系以及基本句法结构。这类题目一定不可以跟着感觉走，以读得顺不顺当做判定标准。

15.2　比较级和最高级错误

比较级和最高级错误在 SAT 中有两种出题方法。

（1）形式错误：more 与-er 不可同时出现。

例 15-7

Just how critical an improved balance of trade is to a healthy
　A　　B

economy has never been more clearer than it is now. No error（OG Test 5）
　　C　　D　　E

这道题目很明显 D 错。英语的比较级的表达一般是双音节及以下用-er，以上用 more。而一定不可能出现的情况是两种表达方法同时出现，如 D 选项。因此这类题目只要不粗心，属于送分题。

例 15-8

No one is more sorrier than me that you missed the awards ceremony.（OG Test 6）

A. more sorrier than me

B. sorrier than I

C. more sorry like myself

D. as sorry like I am

E. sorrier but me

本题 more sorrier 是形容词比较级的形式错误。比较结构使用 than，因此这道题选 B。

例 15-9

If properly cared for，a hundred-year-old violin will produce a more fuller
　　A　　B　　C

sound than it did when it was first made. No error（08.05）
　　D　　E

选项 C 有误。more 和-er 不可以同时出现。所以 more fuller 错误。

（2）范围错误。两者用比较级，三者和三者以上用最高级。

例 15-10

Lions and tigers may be identical in size，but the tiger is the fiercer
　　A　　B　　C

animal and the lion the strongest. No error（OG Test 5）
　　D　　E

题目中 lions 和 tigers 两者作比较，因此 the strongest 最高级错误。

这是很简单的一类比较级最高级的题目，但是，SAT 还常常会用干扰的出题方法加大题目难度。

例 15-11

Of three common approaches to writing music, composers
A
generally seem to find instrumental improvisation the more congenial.
B C D
No error (07. 10)
E

题目一开始处由 of three approaches 开头，给出下文的范围，而在 D 选项用 more 来表达几者的比较关系，所以范围使用错，选 D。

这类在一开头给出三者或三者以上的范围，下文换行后用比较级来表达三者或三者以上的比较关系的干扰项出题方法在历年真题中反复出现。

例 15-12

Of the more than 50 entries in the high school science fair, Sarah's
A B
project was declared more innovative by the panel of six judges.
C D
No error (10. 01)
E

Of the more than 50 entries 给出三者以上的范围，换行后用 more 的比较级，所以选 D。

例 15-13

Of the five films that Phuong saw during the film festival, the last was
A B C
unquestionably the more enjoyable. No error (11. 05)
D E

Of the five films 给出三者以上的范围，中间加一长串修饰限制语和换行后用 more 的比较级。因此选 D。

在比较级最高级的范围错误里，还有一类较有迷惑性的题目。

例 15-14

Though far less innovative as a composer of vocal and instrumental music, George
A B
Philipp Telemann was the most prolific of either Johann Sebastian Bach or George
C D
Frideric Handel. No error (09. 01)
E

这道题目的干扰在于，用 either. . . or 连接，使题目看上去像是三个人在作比较。需要注意，either. . . or 的比较是 George Philipp Telemann 这个人和 Johann Sebastian Bach 比，或者 George Philipp Telemann 这个人和 George Frideric Handel 比，是两两比较。Johann Sebastian Bach 和 George Frideric Handel 是没有关系的。因此，两者比较用比较级，选项 C 错误。

15.3　形近词混淆

在 SAT 语法题目中，80% 的题目需要先抓结构，再对考点。15% 的题目可以使用技巧，还有 5% 的题目需要认真理解意思做题。在这 5% 的题目中，其中有一类就是形近词混淆。

例 15-15

The acoustics of the ancient Greek theater at Epidaurus are so good
A
that an actor's words，even when whispered，are auditory to those
B　　C　　D
sitting in the last row. No error（09.10）
E

分析结构，主句主语是 the acoustics，系动词是 are，表语是 good，由 so...that 引导从句主语 words，系动词是 are，表语是 auditory。我们看到这句话没有结构问题。而认真理解句意，auditory 是表听觉的，在这里意思不符，应该改成 auditable，表示可以被听见的。

一般这类题目的出题特征是，发现全句没有结构等其他错误时，有单个形容词在句中画线，此时比较保险的做法是，认真理解形容词在这里的意思是否是原文想表达的意思。

例 15-16

For any mayor of a vast metropolitan area，an understanding of
A　　B
current issues in all districts is not only desirous but also vital.
C　　D
No error（08.01）
E

同例 15-15，没有发现句子有结构上的错误，看到单个形容词 desirous 画线，通过理解句意发现，desirous 表示渴望的、希望的，不符合上下文意思，这里应该改成 desirable 表示可取的。

例 15-17

Mary Whiton Calkins was an imminent psychologist and philosopher whose
A　　B
research focused on such topics as memory，consciousness，and dreams.
C　　D
No error（12.01）
E

题目中，结构正确，看到单个形容词 imminent 画线，进一步理解句子的意思。imminent 表示“即将”，不符合上下文意思。应该改为 eminent，杰出的。选 A 选项，是形近词混淆的考法。

形近词混淆的题目出题的情况较少，一般一年出 1 道题左右，但是迷惑性很强，属于较难的考点。

第 16 讲　连　接　词

连接词在历年真题中的考查频率并不高。一般有两种出题方法。一种需要把握句子结构，看连接词是否与句中的动词个数对应；另一种需要从语义的角度来把握连接词的语义逻辑是否正确。但 2012 年在连接词的这个考法上有了新的出题动向，要求考生更加牢固地掌握句子分析方法，对句型结构把握的能力要求更高。

本讲内容安排如下：

16.1　连接词结构错误

16.2　连接词语义错误

自测题：

1. Since some (A) people are convinced that (B) dowsing, a method of finding underground water with a Y-shaped stick, is effective, but others condemn the procedure as (C) mere (D) superstition. No error (E) (OG Test 4)

2. After college Susan King founded a publishing company but eventually reduced her role in the firm to pursue her interests in storytelling and art by creating her own books. (12.05 HK)

A. company but eventually reduced
B. company but eventually reducing
C. company, and eventually reducing
D. company, she eventually reduced
E. company, however, she eventually reduced

3. Until relatively recently humans were thought to be uniquely self-aware, scientists now know that most chimpanzees and orangutans can recognize their own reflections. (12.10)

A. scientists now know
B. but scientists now know
C. but scientists who now know
D. however, scientists now know
E. but with scientists now knowing

4. No one objects to (A) his company, even though he has made insulting remarks about (B)

almost every member of the group, when he is a remarkably witty man.
C D

No error (OG Test 5)
E

5. Though best known as a jazz vocalist, he also enjoyed gospel music, whereby he
A B C
told his manager that he wanted to make a recording of his favorite gospel songs.
D

No error (OG Test 7)
E

6. When recipes for iced tea appeared in a few late-nineteenth-century cookbooks,
A B C
the drink did not become popular until the 1904 World's Fair. No error (08.05)
D E

7. We generally think of Canada as the northern neighbor of the United States, and more than half of the states extend farther north than Canada's southernmost point. (OG Test 1)

A. States, and more than half of the states extend
B. States, and it is the case that more than half of the states extend
C. States, but more than half of the states extending
D. States, whereas more than half of the states are extending
E. States; however, more than half of the states extend

16.1 连接词结构错误

结构篇我们讲到过一句话里有且只有一个谓语动词，当需要把 n 个句子合成一个句子时，需要 $n-1$ 个连接词。所以在处理这类题目的时候，“抓结构”必不可少。

例 16-1

Since some people are convinced that dowsing, a method of finding underground
A B
water with a Y-shaped stick, is effective, but others condemn the procedure as mere
C D
superstition. No error (OG Test 4)
E

分析句子结构可以知道，句中有三个动词——are，is，condemn，因此有三句话，需要两个连接词。但是在句中，我们找到了三个连接词——since，that，but。所以很容易看出，句子里连接词多余，导致句子结构有误，因此选 A。

在 2012 年的考试中，对连接词的考试有了新的考法。

例 16-2

After college Susan King founded a publishing company but eventually reduced her role in the

firm to pursue her interests in storytelling and art by creating her own books. (12.05 HK)

A. company but eventually reduced

B. company but eventually reducing

C. company, and eventually reducing

D. company, she eventually reduced

E. company, however, she eventually reduced

例 16-3

Until relatively recently humans were thought to be uniquely self-aware, scientists now know that most chimpanzees and orangutans can recognize their own reflections. (12.10)

A. scientists now know

B. but scientists now know

C. but scientists who now know

D. however, scientists now know

E. but with scientists now knowing

例 16-2 和例 16-3 是两道 2012 年的语法题目。两道题都是在考查小词的词性转换问题。SAT 语法从 2011 年起就有越来越深入的趋势，到 2012 年继续这个趋势。在大考点不变的前提下，对一些考点有了更细的考查，更深入地考查考生对基本句法结构的分析和把握能力。

以上两道题目，after 和 until 都是既可以做连接词，又可以做介词。我们需要知道，这些词什么时候当连接词使用，什么时候当介词使用。

一般而言，当这些词后面接的是一个句子的时候，它们做连接词。当这些词后面接一个名词时，它们做介词。例如：

I found your coat after you had left the house.

After 后接一个句子，动词是 had left，因此 after 是一个连接词。

She started the job soon after she left the university.

After 后接一个句子，动词是 left，因此 after 是一个连接词。

After the performance there was enthusiastic applause.

After 后接一个名词 the performance，因此 after 是一个介词。

I don't like going out after dark.

After 后接一个名词 dark，因此 after 是一个介词。

Wait until I call.

Until 后接一个句子，动词是 call，因此 until 是连接词。

We won't start until Bob comes.

Until 后接一个句子，动词是 comes，因此 until 是连接词。

I wait until 10 o'clock.

Until 后接一个名词 10 o'clock，因此 until 是介词。

The problem has never really arisen until now.

Until 后接一个名词 now，因此 until 是介词。

根据这个思路，首先看 2012 年 5 月的香港真题。“After college Susan King founded a publishing company”中的 after 后接一个名词 college，而非句子，因此，after 是一个介词。这里为了干扰考生，没有在 after college 这个状语结构后面加逗号。分析句子结构，题干中有两个动词，分别是 founded 和 reduced，句子需要一个连接词。句中的连接词是 but，连接两个平行并列句。因此，题干的结构正确。A 选项正确。B 选项 but 前后不平行，排除。C 选项，and 前后不平行，排除。D、E 选项，句子缺连接词，是一个 run-on 句型，排除。D、E 选项是这道题目中最有迷惑性的选项。如果考生没有正确地分析出 after 在这里不是连接词，很容易选择 D 或 E 选项。

再看 2012 年 10 月的真题。“until relatively recently humans were thought to be uniquely self-aware”中的 until 后接 relatively recently 的副词结构，共同构成状语成分。同 2012 年 5 月的香港题目一样，为了干扰考生思路，没有在这个结构后边加逗号。但是，可以明确一点，until 在这里不是连接词。句中的动词分别是 were，know，can recognize。三个动词，需要两个连接词。而句中只有一个连接词 that。因此句子是一个 run-on 句型。A 选项排除。B 选项加了一个连接词 but，句子结构正确。C 选项加了两个连接词，分别是 but 和 who，造成句中少动词。D 选项，however 是副词，不能连接句子，排除。E 选项，but 前后不平行，排除。因此只能选 B。

对句子结构进行分析时需要注意，不能用有无逗号来做分析句子的标志。SAT 语法题目中，有时为了对考生进行思维的干扰，会在该加逗号的时候，不打逗号。

比如这两道题目，没有写成“after college,”和“until relatively recently,”的形式，目的就在于对考生进行干扰。

16.2 连接词语义错误

在 SAT 中，绝大多数的题目需要抓结构，不需要对语义作细致的了解，但是有两类题目需要看完意思后才能将题目做对。一类是形近词混淆，另一类是连接词语义关系。形近词混淆这类题目只会在短画线中出现，连接词语义关系是在长短画线中都会出现的，我们来看例题：

例 16-4

No one objects to his company, even though he has made insulting remarks about
A B

almost every member of the group, when he is a remarkably witty man.
C D

No error (OG Test 5)
E

分析句子结构发现，主语是 one，动词是 objects，连接词 even though 连接另一个句子，主语是 he，动词是 has made，连接词 when 再连接一个主语 he，动词是 is 的句子。全句结

构没有问题，而看到画线的连接词 when，发现语义不对。前后不是“当……”的关系。因此选 D。

例 16-5

Though best known as a jazz vocalist, he also enjoyed gospel music, whereby he
A B C
told his manager that he wanted to make a recording of his favorite gospel songs.
D

No error (OG Test 7)
E

分析句型结构，主语是 he，动词是 enjoyed，whereby 做连接词连接从句，主语是 he，动词是 told，told 后一个宾语从句 that 引导，主语是 he，动词是 wanted。结构没有问题，而语义上 whereby 表示凭借、借助，语义有误，选 C。

例 16-6

When recipes for iced tea appeared in a few late-nineteenth-century cookbooks,
A B C
the drink did not become popular until the 1904 World's Fair. No error (08.05)
D E

分析句型结构，由 when 引导的从句中，主语是 recipes，动词是 appeared，主句的主语是 the drink，动词是 did not become，表语是 popular。句子整体结构正确。理解语义发现，上下文不是“当……”的关系。因此，连接词的语义有误。选 A。

而当在长画线中考查连接词语义关系时，选项中会有比短画线更加明显的选项特征。

例 16-7

We generally think of Canada as the northern neighbor of the United States, and more than half of the states extend farther north than Canada's southernmost point. (OG Test 1)

A. States, and more than half of the states extend

B. States, and it is the case that more than half of the states extend

C. States, but more than half of the states extending

D. States, whereas more than half of the states are extending

E. States; however, more than half of the states extend

在长画线中，考查连接词语义关系的比较容易识别。当发现选项不断在连接词上做文章时，我们需要关注语义。例题中，A，B，C，D，E，在 and，and，but，whereas，however 上不断变化，所以我们首先需要看题目的意思。了解完上下文语义后可知，本题前后文是转折关系，因此只能从 C，E 中作选择。C 选项，前后结构不平行，因此选 E。而 E 选项中的 however 就是我们在动词考点中为大家铺垫过的属于副词的词。副词不可以用于连接句子，而句中刚好有可以当连接词使用的分号，因此 E 选项结构语义均正确。

第 17 讲　名词单复数

在英语语法中，名词单复数是一个学习难点。名词单复数是在 SAT 中考查较少，一般出题特征是有名词画线时，需要关注单复数情况。而考生需要关注的是在 SAT 语法题目中，如何判定名词的单复数情况。

自测题

1. Joining a grassroots movement against inhumane working conditions, some consumers in the United States have stopped buying (A) products from countries in which (B) workers are essentially (C) a slave laborer. (D) No error (E) (OG Test 2)

2. As (A) children mature, they develop an independence (B) that their parents, who have been (C) responsible for them since they were born, often find difficult to accept (D). No error (E) (OG Test 3)

对名词单数复数的考查也是 SAT 考试的考点之一。首先看几组表达，判断以下表达的正误情况：

their voice

their heart

their desire

their feeling

判断的标准是看名词是否可以共享。

voice，每个人的声音都有自己的特质，不可以被共享，因此应该是 their voices。

heart，与 voice 同理，不可以被共享，所以应该表达成 their hearts。

desire，决心是可以被共享的，所以 their desire 正确。

feeling，与 desire 同理，可以共享，所以 their feeling 正确。

例 17-1

Joining a grassroots movement against inhumane working conditions, some consumers in the United States have stopped buying (A)

products from countries in which workers are essentially a slave laborer.
B C D

No error (OG Test 2)
E

分析句子结构，主语是 some consumers，动词是 have stopped，定语从句中的主语是 workers，系动词是 are，表语是 a slave laborer。我们注意到，slave laborer 是不可以共享的名词，前面的 workers 是复数，因此要改为 slave laborers 才对。所以选 D。

例 17-2

As children mature, they develop an independence that their
A B

parents, who have been responsible for them since they were born,
C

often find difficult to accept. No error (OG Test 3)
D E

分析句型结构，主语是 they，动词是 develop，宾语是 an independence，后接定语从句，主语是 parents，动词是 find。这道题目很容易误选 B。但是需要注意 independence 是可以共享的名词，因为关于独立的标准不可能千变万化，所以这里的 an independence 是正确的，是一个干扰选项。这道题选 E。

第 18 讲　固 定 搭 配

固定搭配是 SAT 语法中最难把握的一种题型。要求考生对较为常见的固定搭配有所积累。但是，在历年真题中也有一些较为固定的考法，本讲将为大家进行统一总结。

自测题：

1. As their brains mature neurologically, infants become more capable to distinguish
A B C
the shapes and textures of the objects around them. No error (OG Test 1)
D E

2. Because insufficient funding causes the failure of many new businesses is the reason why Tamar and Robert waited to open their coffee shop until they had enough money. (OG Test 3)

A. Because insufficient funding causes the failure of many new businesses is the reason why

B. Because insufficient funding causes the failure of many new businesses,

C. Insufficient funding causes the failure of many new businesses is the reason why

D. As a result of insufficient funding causing the failure of many new businesses;

E. The fact of insufficient funding is causing many new businesses to fail is why

3. The reason first novels are so often their writers' best work is that is draws upon all the experiences of childhood. (OG Test 5)

A. is that it draws upon

B. is that these first efforts draw upon

C. is because of these first efforts drawing from

D. is because of them drawing upon

E. is their drawing from

由于固定搭配对学生的平时积累要求较高，固定搭配是 SAT 语法考试中较难应对的一种题型。但是，在 SAT 中固定搭配的出题比重较小，同时又有一些较为固定的出题方法。

例 18-1

As their brains mature neurologically, infants become more capable to distinguish
A B C
the shapes and textures of the objects around them. No error (OG Test 1)
D E

这道题选 C。因为这里的固定搭配是 be capable of doing。在应对这类题目时，需要注意，一般而言同根词的搭配一致。例如：

知道 be capable of doing，可以推出 have capability of doing；

知道 be able to do，可以推出 have ability to do；

知道 tend to do，可以推出 tendency to do。

除了用同根词搭配一致的方法扩充固定搭配以外，在历年真题长画线中，还有一类比较固定的考试模式。

例 18-2

Because insufficient funding causes the failure of many new businesses is the reason why Tamar and Robert waited to open their coffee shop until they had enough money. (OG Test 3)

A. Because insufficient funding causes the failure of many new businesses is the reason why

B. Because insufficient funding causes the failure of many new businesses,

C. Insufficient funding causes the failure of many new businesses is the reason why

D. As a result of insufficient funding causing the failure of many new businesses;

E. The fact of insufficient funding is causing many new businesses to fail is why

例 18-3

The reason first novels are so often their writers' best work is that is draws upon all the experiences of childhood. (OG Test 5)

A. is that it draws upon

B. is that these first efforts draw upon

C. is because of these first efforts drawing from

D. is because of them drawing upon

E. is their drawing from

在长画线中，在画线部分出现

①the reason is that
the reason is why
the reason is because
以及这种表现方式的各种变体 改成 because 的选项就是正确答案

如例 18-2，我们在句中画线部分看到 is the reason why，可能的选项 A，B，A 选项 because 和 is the reason why 语义重复，排除。B 选项正确。

② the reason. . . be that. . .

另外一种情况，如例 18-3，当看到开头部分以 the reason 开头，后面的部分画线，后边的部分是 be that 的答案就是正确选项。根据这个思路，可能的选项是 A，B。看到两个选项在代词单复数上有不同，回原题看上下文，novels 是复数，所以对应的代词也应该是复数，所以选 B。

第 19 讲　拼 写 错 误

拼写错误着重考查不规则动词的过去时态和过去分词的拼写方法。本讲将对不规则动词的变形方法作一个总结。同时，为考生梳理 SAT 语法中考查过的拼写错误题目。一般而言，做这类题目，除了要对特定的信号词有敏感度，也需要对句子结构有所把握。

自测题：

1. Because traffic was unusually heavy (A), Jim arrived ten minutes late for (B) his job interview even though he had ran desperately (C) all the way from (D) the bus stop. No error (E) (07. 10)

2. According to (A) a recent study, the domestication of (B) cats had began (C) in the Middle East over (D) 100，000 years ago. No error (E) (11. 05)

3. For our hike, my two companions and I (A) had chose (B) to walk along the Appalachian Trail, one of (C) the oldest and best-loved (D) hiking paths in the United States.

No error (12.01)
E

4. Ancient documents wrote on vellum, a form of fine parchment made of animal
A
hides, must be stored under carefully controlled conditions because changes inhumidity
B C
can be damaging. No error (11.01)
D E

5. After tying his horse to the hitching post, the cowboy dusted off his boots and
A
taken off his hat, causing the horse to shake its mane and move around uneasily.
B C D
No error (08.05)
E

拼写错误是 SAT 考试中干扰性较大的一种考试方法。出题频率较低。一般而言，SAT 中的拼写错误不会考查如把 from 拼成 form 的拼写类错误。SAT 考的是过去式和过去分词的混用。

在英语中，不规则动词的过去式和过去分词是 SAT 的一个考查要点，需要知道的是，一般不规则动词变化是在 i-a-u 三个元音字母之间进行变化。例如：

swim—swam—swum

sing—sang—song

begin—began—begun

run—ran—run

例 19-1

Because traffic was unusually heavy, Jim arrived ten minutes late for his job interview
A B
even though he had ran desperately all the way from the bus stop. No error (07.10)
C D E

选项 C，had ran desperately，拼写错误，根据上面讲到的规律，动词的不规则变化常常在 i-a-u 三个字母中进行变化，因此，run 的过去分词的应该是 run。

例 19-2

According to a recent study, the domestication of cats had began in the Middle
A B C
East over 100, 000 years ago. No error (11.05)
D E

选项 C，had began 拼写错误，应该写成 had begun。

SAT 中除了会出现 i-a-u 变换的不规则动词外，还会对一些常见的不规则动词进行考查。

例 19-3

For our hike, my two companions and I (A) had chose (B) to walk along the Appalachian Trail, one of (C) the oldest and best-loved (D) hiking paths in the United States. No error (E) (12.01)

选项 B，had chose 拼写错误。choose 的动词变形是 choose，chose，chosen。在 had 后的过去分词应该是 had chosen。虽然 choose 这个动词的变形不是 i-a-u 类的变形，但是也属于常见的不规则动词。

需要注意的是，拼写错误的这类出题，不一定都有标志词 had 等。

例 19-4

Ancient documents wrote on (A) vellum, a form of fine parchment made of animal hides, must be stored under carefully (B) controlled conditions because changes in (C) humidity can be damaging (D). No error (E) (11.01)

分析句型结构，句点内有三个动词，分别是 wrote，must be stored 和 can be，有一个连接词 because。由此可以发现句子结构有误。而选项 A，wrote on 中 wrote 拼写错误。write 动词的变形是 write，wrote，written。根据上下文结构，这里的 wrote 应该改成 written，是一个过去分词做 documents 的后置定语的结构。

这道题目，没有 had 等做标志词，需要厘清句子结构再做题。

例 19-5

After (A) tying his horse to the hitching post, the cowboy dusted off his boots and taken (B) off his hat, causing (C) the horse to shake its mane and move around uneasily (D). No error (E) (08.05)

这道真题中，句子的主语是 cowboy，动词是 dusted off 和由 and 连接的另一个平行动词。但是 B 选项中的 taken 是过去分词的形式，无法做谓语使用。因此，是拼写错误，需要改成 took。

第 20 讲　语义重复啰唆

语义重复啰唆，在 SAT 语法里不属于常考考点，在题目中偶有出现。它要求句子要简洁明了，不要给出重复信息。

例 20-1

A volunteer organization, the Covington Soup Kitchen has been feeding needy
A

families since 1977, annually distributing nearly a million pounds of food each year.
B C D

No error (OG Test 3)
E

表达不可以重复啰唆，在 SAT 语法对这一考点有所考查，但是考查的频率较低。如例 20-1，上下文中已经有了 annually，D 选项 each year，语义重复，所以选 D。在长画线中，也有类似考法。

例 20-2

The poet Firdawsi composed the Iranian national epic *Shah-nameh* in 1010 with his purpose being to recount the history of the Persian kings. (OG Test 2)

A. with his purpose being to recount

B. and his purpose was recounting

C. to recount

D. thus recounted

E. he recounted

画线部分 with one's purpose 已经表目的，to do 也表目的，语义重复。因此，答案是 C。

第 21 讲 排 序 题

排序题是 SAT 语法中的难题。题目难在考生容易按自己的思路对句子结构进行理解。如果考生能将“抓结构，对考点”的方法运用到做题当中，这类有迷惑性的修饰结构就不会成为我们分析句子的难题。

自测题：

1. Professor Brand, who enjoys welcoming international students to her home on Thanksgiving, served the traditional turkey dressed in Pilgrim clothing. (06.05)

A. served the traditional turkey dressed in Pilgrim clothing

B. served the traditional turkey, dressing in Pilgrim clothing

C. serving the traditional turkey and dressed in Pilgrim clothing

D. dressed in Pilgrim clothing to serve the traditional turkey

E. dressed in Pilgrim clothing and the traditional turkey was served

2. When we were cleaning the garage, my sister and I found the old soccer ball in a dark cor-

ner we used to play with when we were young. (09.01)

A. the old soccer ball in a dark corner we used to play with when we were young

B. in a dark corner from when we were young the old soccer ball we played with

C. in a dark corner the old soccer ball we used to play with when we were young

D. the old soccer ball in a dark corner, we used to play with it when we were young

E. the old soccer ball, having played with it when we were young, in a dark corner

3. When I asked which of the children was his daughter, he pointed to a little girl feeding a duck in a blue dress. (11.01)

A. feeding a duck in a blue dress

B. feeding a duck and was in a blue dress

C. feeding a duck, she was in a blue dress

D. in a blue dress who was feeding a duck

E. in a blue dress, she was feeding a duck

排序题，主要是需要搞清后置定语的修饰关系。

例 21-1

Professor Brand, who enjoys welcoming international students to her home on Thanksgiving, served the traditional turkey dressed in Pilgrim clothing. (06.05)

A. served the traditional turkey dressed in Pilgrim clothing

B. served the traditional turkey, dressing in Pilgrim clothing

C. serving the traditional turkey and dressed in Pilgrim clothing

D. dressed in Pilgrim clothing to serve the traditional turkey

E. dressed in Pilgrim clothing and the traditional turkey was served

分析句子结构，主语是 Professor Brand，中间接一个由 who 引导的非限制性定语从句，动词是 served。由此可以判断，C 选项错误，句中没有谓语动词。选项 A，dressed in Pilgrim clothing 没有加逗号，放在了名词 turkey 后，按照结构必须修饰 turkey。由此可以看出，修饰的逻辑有误，所以 A 错。B 选项，dressing in 的逻辑主语是 Professor Brand。但是，dress 这个词是“装饰，装扮”的意思。人只能被装扮，需要用 dressed，因此 B 选项错误。剩 D，E 两个选项。根据简洁性原则，主动的表达大于被动的表达，E 选项里 turkey was served，是一个被动。因此选 D。

例 21-2

When we were cleaning the garage, my sister and I found the old soccer ball in a dark corner we used to play with when we were young. (09.01)

A. the old soccer ball in a dark corner we used to play with when we were young

B. in a dark corner from when we were young the old soccer ball we played with

C. in a dark corner the old soccer ball we used to play with when we were young

D. the old soccer ball in a dark corner, we used to play with it when we were young

E. the old soccer ball, having played with it when we were young, in a dark corner

分析句子结构，主句的主语是 my sister and I，动词是 found，宾语是 the soccer ball。

后接状语 in a dark corner。在 corner 后，接了一个省略了关系代词的定语从句 we used to play with。可以看出，we used to play with 如果修饰 corner，逻辑有误，因此 A 选项错误。B 选项，语序混乱，排除。C 选项，是一个分裂结构。为了避免句子的歧义以及使句子中的修饰关系正确，应将句中的状语部分提到宾语之前。而 we used to play with 用于修饰 the old soccer ball。因此 C 选项正确。D，E 选项，有代词，放最后。因此，这道题选 C。

例 21-3

When I asked which of the children was his daughter, he pointed to a little girl feeding a duck in a blue dress. (11.01)

A. feeding a duck in a blue dress

B. feeding a duck and was in a blue dress

C. feeding a duck, she was in a blue dress

D. in a blue dress who was feeding a duck

E. in a blue dress, she was feeding a duck

分析句子结构，主句的主语是 he，动词是 pointed to，宾语是 a little girl。a little girl 后接现在分词 feeding a duck 的结构做后置定语。在 duck 之后，有一个介宾短语 in a blue dress 做定语修饰 duck。由此可知，句子逻辑有误，A 选项错误。B 选项，用 and 连接了省略主语的平行并列句。而主句的主语是 he，and 后的主语也得是 he，因此语义逻辑错误，B 选项有误。C，E 两个选项都是 run-on 句型。逗号连接了两个句子，排除。剩 D 选项。D 选项将介宾短语 in a blue dress 提前，当后置定语修饰 girl，在这之后又用 who 引导的定语从句一同修饰 girl。因为定语从句中有指人的关系代词 who，句子不会产生歧义，因此这道题选 D。

第 22 讲　简洁性原则

简洁性原则，是指要选取最为简洁明了的结构为答案。在使用这一原则时，考生需要注意两点：

第一，简洁性原则只在长画线（IS）题中使用。使用的顺序也一定是将前面的考点一一筛过后，在五个选项中剩两个可能选项，选取两者的最优项时使用的。

第二，在简洁性原则的限制下，选出的选项常常表现为是选项中的较短的句子或结构。但需要注意，我们并不能够通过句子或结构的长短来说明是否符合简洁性原则。换句话说，短，只是在某些情况下的表象，而不是我们选择的规则。短，不是用于判断是否简洁的标准。

自测题：

1. Conners, a publishing and media services company, is acquiring Dispatch Education, it

manufactures school uniforms. (OG Test 4)

A. Dispatch Education, it manufactures

B. Dispatch Education, which manufactures

C. Dispatch Education, manufacturing

D. Dispatch Education; it is manufacturing

E. Dispatch Education; for the manufacturing of

2. Being as she is a gifted storyteller, Linda Goss is an expert at describing people and places. (OG Test 5)

A. Being as she is a gifted storyteller

B. In being a gifted storyteller

C. A gifted storyteller

D. Although she is a gifted storyteller

E. Telling stories giftedly

3. The harmful effects of smoking on the vascular system is increasingly well documented. (OG Test 5)

A. is increasingly well documented

B. is more and more documented

C. are increasingly well documented

D. are increasingly in better documentation

E. has increased in better documentation

简洁性原则的常用规则有以下几条：

(1) 单句 > 从句 > 分词 > 平行结构。

(2) 动词 > 名词。

(3) 形容词 > 名词。

(4) 主动 > 被动。

(5) because > because of,

because > 一切表示“因为”的表达，例如：being that, in that, seeing that 等。

例 22-1

Conners, a publishing and media services company, is acquiring Dispatch Education, it manufactures school uniforms. (OG Test 4)

A. Dispatch Education, it manufactures

B. Dispatch Education, which manufactures

C. Dispatch Education, manufacturing

D. Dispatch Education; it is manufacturing

E. Dispatch Education; for the manufacturing of

首先分析句型结构，主语是 conners，动词是 is，逗号后的主语是 it，动词是 manufactures。句子的问题是 run-on 句型，缺少连接词。因此，A 错。E 选项，结构不平行，错。D 选项，有代词 it 出现，放到最后再看。剩下 B，C 选项，使用简洁性原则——单句 > 从

句 > 分词 > 平行，选 B。

例 22-2

Being as she is a gifted storyteller, Linda Goss is an expert at describing people and places. (OG Test 5)

A. Being as she is a gifted storyteller

B. In being a gifted storyteller

C. A gifted storyteller

D. Although she is a gifted storyteller

E. Telling stories giftedly

首先通过 being 自杀词排除 A，B 两个选项。D 选项语义不正确，排除。剩 C，E。根据简洁性原则——单句 > 分词，因此这道题选 C。

例 22-3

The harmful effects of smoking on the vascular system is increasingly well documented (OG Test 5).

A. is increasingly well documented

B. is more and more documented

C. are increasingly well documented

D. are increasingly in better documentation

E. has increased in better documentation

分析句型结构，主语是 effects，动词是 is。由此可见，单复数错误。因此 A，B，E 选项全都排除。剩下 C，D，根据简洁性原则——形容词大于名词，因此选 C（documented > documentation）。

第 23 讲　改 进 文 章

改进文章是 SAT 语法考试目的的集中体现。SAT 语法的考试思路就是基于文章修改式的语法考试，对句子结构、句子逻辑脉络都有所考核。从句子挑错，到改进句子，再到篇章改进，都是对这一出题思路的层层递进。

本讲内容安排如下：

23.1　结构阅读法

23.2　语法题

23.3　阅读题

我们拿一篇改进文章为例，开始为大家展开改进文章的做题方法的讲解。

例 23-1

(1) A castle is not the same thing as a palace, though some people use the terms "castle"

and “palace” interchangeably. (2) Castles are fortified dwellings, built by feudal lords of the Middle Ages. (3) Their stone walls, moats, iron gates, and drawbridges were designed to ward off marauding plunderers and hostile armies. (4) Small windows in castle walls allowed archers to shoot at intruders from positions of comparative safety. (5) But even welcomed guests would have found castles less than inviting. (6) In royal palaces there were to be found many comforts that medieval castles did not offer. (7) These had dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters instead.

(8) Though castles were mad obsolete by the invention of the cannon in the fourteenth century, many survive to the present day as fascinating relics of a bygone era. (9) These structures, which were designed to keep people at a distance, now attract visitors from all over the world. (10) There are scores of medieval castles located throughout Europe. (11) Some, like Eilean Donan Castle and the Chateau de Chambonneau, are well-maintained tourist attractions. (12) In one Welsh village, the decaying remnants of a castle sit beside cozy brick houses on an ordinary street. (OG Test 1)

1. Of the following, which would most improve the first paragraph (sentences (1)—(7))?

A. Providing a brief summary of medieval history

B. Tracing the origin of the word “castle”

C. Explaining more fully what a palace is

D. Placing sentence (7) immediately after sentence (1)

E. Deleting sentence (3)

2. Which of the following sentences, if inserted immediately after sentence (3), would most effectively link sentences (3) and (4)?

A. These walls were built by laborers known as “serfs”.

B. Drawbridges had been in use since ancient times.

C. Those who defied such obstacles did so at their peril.

D. Under feudalism, all land was considered property of the king.

E. Still, not all visitors came with hostile intentions.

3. In context, which of the following is the best way to combine sentences (6) and (7) (reproduced below)?

In royal palaces there were to be found many comforts that medieval castles did not offer. These had dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters instead.

A. Because medieval castles had dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters, royal palaces offered many more comforts than could be found there.

B. Lacking many comforts compared to royal palaces, medieval castles instead offered dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters.

C. While medieval castles offered only dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters, many comforts were to be found in royal palaces.

D. Unlike medieval castles, royal palaces offered many comforts not found in dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters.

E. With their dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters, medieval castles offered few of the comforts to be found in royal palaces.

4. Which of the following would most appropriately be inserted at the beginning of sentence (9)?

A. Actually,

B. Basically,

C. Ironically,

D. By contrast,

E. In retrospect,

5. Which of the following sentences would best be inserted between sentences (11) and (12)?

A. But not all castles can be considered obsolete.

B. Elsewhere, the environment may be a factor.

C. However, many travelers prefer to avoid such "tourist traps".

D. Others crumble away in relative obscurity.

E. Besides, appearances are often misleading.

6. Which of the following sentences would most effectively be placed after sentence (12)?

A. In the final analysis, palaces are actually little more than luxurious castles.

B. There, medieval austerity stands in bold relief against a background of modern comfort.

C. The decline of the castle's importance as an architectural form coincided with the transformation of medieval society.

D. In the United States, imposing structures like Hearst's Castle are not really castles in the strictest sense of the word.

E. Eilean Donan Castle was named for a 7th century saint who lived as a hermit in the Scottish Highlands.

23.1 结构阅读法

改进文章与其他两种题型的不同在于，有一个段落篇章作为出题背景（如例 23-1 所示）。绝大多数考生见到改进文章就心生抵触，他们不是由于这种题目难，而是因为看到背景文章就害怕。这种做题心理会极大影响答题。其实当静下心来仔细阅读的时候，我们不难发现，改进文章中的背景文章不过是个用于唬人的纸老虎——文章短，文章易懂。

根据改进文章的出题特点，这类题目一定要先读原文再做题目。而读文章也不是读得越细越好，比如不放弃每个词，比如默默翻译，这些都是做这类题目的大忌。读文章一定要读出文章的结构。看似抽象，其实很容易操作。具体的方法就是重点读每一段的第一句或第二句，一般是这个段落的主题句。英文文章对结构要求得比较严格。主题句要全面地概括总结下文。因此整个段落的最大信息量就在主题句中。其他的部分可以略读。

比如例 23-1，我们需要细读的句子是：

（1） A castle is not the same thing as a palace, though some people use the terms “castle” and “palace” interchangeably.

（8）Though castles were mad obsolete by the invention of the cannon in the fourteenth century, many survive to the present day as fascinating relics of a bygone era.

其他部分的文字可以略读。

在文章脉络清晰的前提下，大部分的阅读题目都可以迎刃而解。

1. Of the following, which would most improve the first paragraph (sentences (1)—(7))?

A. Providing a brief summary of medieval history

B. Tracing the origin of the word “castle”

C. Explaining more fully what a palace is

D. Placing sentence (7) immediately after sentence (1)

E. Deleting sentence (3)

第 1 题，如何改进第一段。我们再看一遍第一段的段首句，A castle is not the same thing as a palace, though some people use the terms “castle” and “palace” interchangeably. 按要求主题句应该是对下文的总起，主题句讲到的问题，下文会进行进一步论述。在主题句里提到了 castle 和 palace，而我们发现在下文中，都是在说 castle，没有对 palace 的过多描述。因此，改进第一段的方法是 C 选项，对 palace 进行描述。

23.2 语法题

结构阅读法读清背景文章，是做题的基础。接下来，我们对改进文章的常考题型作一个总结。第一类题型——语法题。

改进文章中，语法题的做题方法、思路和技巧与长画线完全一致。例如，长画线中使用的自杀词技巧及对代词的严格要求在改进文章的语法题中同样适用。

改进文章的语法题分为两种出题方法，一种是画线修改。

例 23-2

A recent version of Shakespeare’s Romeo and Juliet drew harsh reviews from purists, they are people who expect filmmakers to follow the original text exactly. (OG Test 2 30)

A. (as it is now)

B. purists; they were people who expected

C. purists in expecting

D. purists. These expected

E. purists, those who expect

另一种是不画线修改。

例 23-3

Which of the following revisions is most needed in sentence 15 (reproduced below)? (OG Test 3 34)

He believed that peace has to start among the young, being that the hatred of the adults in the campers' homelands is very deeply ingrained.

A. Insert "Furthermore" at the beginning.

B. Add "people" after "young".

C. Change "being that" to "since".

D. Change "adults" to "elders".

E. Change "is" to "are"

不难看出，两种题型只在形态有差异。画线修改的语法题在题干中有下画线，题目的出题方式与长画线相似。不同的是，改进文章中的画线修改一定要时刻记住看完题目后要回原文扫一眼上下文再作选择。因为有些情况下，画线修改的答案线索在上下文中。

例 23-2 中，看完题干部分"A recent version of Shakespeare's Romeo and Juliet drew harsh reviews from purists, they are people who expect filmmakers to follow the original text exactly."发现题目中有明显的代词。根据长画线代词考点的思路，有代词的选项放到最后选，开始筛选项。A，B 放到最后，D 选项 these 自杀，剩下 C 和 E。C 选项语义改变，只能选 E。

不画线修改，一般在题干给出的句子没有下划线，在选项中一般用引号引出需要修改的部分。不画线修改的做题方法较有技巧，一般而言此类题目要记住一个做题口诀——有错改错，无错删整句。

读题过程中，看句子是否有长画线中讲到过的语法错误，如果有错误，直接将错误的部分选出即可。如果读完句子发现没有任何问题，那么一定会有一个选项写着"delete the sentence"，直接将这个选项选出即可。看例 23-3 中的句子，

He believed that peace has to start among the young, being that the hatred of the adults in the campers' homelands is very deeply ingrained.

读完句子后，我们发现里面有一个长画线中的自杀词 being，由此直接找改动 being 的选项，因此这道题目应该选 C。

不画线修改题中绝对不选的选项有以下两种：

（1）保持原句不变的选项一定不选。

（2）将一句话移到某个位置的选项一定不选。

23.3 阅读题

阅读题的题型较为变化多样，不如语法题有规律性，做题关键在看清文章结构，重点看每一段的主题句。但是，有几类题目的出题频率较高，我们来看一下答题技巧。

1. 句子插入题

改进文章中，常考句子插入题，在大部分情况下，只要我们将文章结构把握清晰，关注前后文即可。

但是有一些题目可以通过一定的技巧做题来快速解答。最常用的技巧是使用指代关系做题。当看到上文中有 some，one 的字样，或者是隐含在原文中的 some，one，选项中出现 another，other，others 或 the other 的选项就是正确答案。如例 23-1 中第 5 题：

(11) Some, like Eilean Donan Castle and the Chateau de Chambonneau, are well-maintained tourist attractions. (12) In one Welsh village, the decaying remnants of a castle sit beside cozy brick houses on an ordinary street. (OG Test 1)

5. Which of the following sentences would best be inserted between sentences (11) and (12)?

A. But not all castles can be considered obsolete.

B. Elsewhere, the environment may be a factor.

C. However, many travelers prefer to avoid such “tourist traps.”

D. Others crumble away in relative obscurity.

E. Besides, appearances are often misleading.

根据使用指代关系做题的技巧，我们很容易根据 (11) 句的 some 判断出选项 D，others 的选项是正确答案。

2. 句子二合一

在改进文章中，较有难度的一类题目就是句子二合一。出题的方法常常是，给你两个句子，然后题目问，如何将这两个句子合成一句话呢？比如例 23-1 中的第 3 题：

3. In context, which of the following is the best way to combine sentences (6) and (7) (reproduced below)?

In royal palaces there were to be found many comforts that medieval castles did not offer. These had dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters instead.

A. Because medieval castles had dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters, royal palaces offered many more comforts than could be found there.

B. Lacking many comforts compared to royal palaces, medieval castles instead offered dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters.

C. While medieval castles offered only dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters, many comforts were to be found in royal palaces.

D. Unlike medieval castles, royal palaces offered many comforts not found in dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters.

E. With their dark dungeons and damp, drafty living quarters, medieval castles offered few of the comforts to be found in royal palaces.

这类题目做题时需要掌握的思路是，通过阅读文章找出两句当中重点的句子当主句，当中心。

那么如何选择两句话中的重点句子呢？一般而言，和全文中心意思最为接近的那句话，或者全文中心词出现的那句话当主句。比如第 3 题，通过阅读文章，castle 是全文中心词，因此将有 castle 出现的那句话当做两句话中的主句，另一句当做辅句。因此，可以排除的选项有 A，C，D。这三句话中都是 castle 没有在主句上。

做完第一步——做主句后，我们要进行第二个步骤，即，做中心。如何来辨别是否做了中心呢？我们要从语义的角度进行分析。既然 castle 是全文反复提到的中心词，我们也由此推知，castle 在语义上也得是中心所在。对比 B，E 选项。两个选项都做到了第一个要

求，即有 castle 的句子当主句，但是 B 选项没有做到第二个要求，即有 castle 的句子还要是语义的中心。我们看到 B 选项的状语部分“Lacking many comforts compared to royal palaces，”这里的重点是学习体会 compare 这个词。和 × × × 比，× × × 就是比较的基准。这里 compare to royal palaces，可知，royal palaces 是比较基准，是中心，而不是 castle。因此 B 选项排除，只能选 E。

3. 中心思想题

改进文章中会有各种与原文逻辑相关的题目，其中出题最多的一类就是根据文章或段落的思想放入结尾句。比如例 23-1 中的第 6 题：

6. Which of the following sentences would most effectively be placed after sentence (12)?

A. In the final analysis, palaces are actually little more than luxurious castles.

B. There, medieval austerity stands in bold relief against a background of modern comfort.

C. The decline of the castle's importance as an architectural form coincided with the transformation of medieval society.

D. In the United States, imposing structures like Hearst's Castle are not really castles in the strictest sense of the word.

E. Eilean Donan Castle was named for a 7th century saint who lived as a hermit in the Scottish Highlands.

结尾句的放置需要遵循的思路是，概括上文，不可以引出新的观点和细节。

根据这一思路我们来看题，在（12）句之后该加入什么？回找原文，

(11) Some, like Eilean Donan Castle and the Chateau de Chambonneau, are well-maintained tourist attractions. (12) In one Welsh village, the decaying remnants of a castle sit beside cozy brick houses on an ordinary street.

A 选项，“palaces...”加入了新的观点。因为上文中都是在说 castle，几乎没有提到过 palaces，因此不能以此结尾。B 选项，通读之后发现没有引出新观点和新细节，同时做到了对上文一定程度的总结，备选。C 选项，“The decline of the castle's importance...”文章没有对重要性的相关描述，引出了新细节。D 选项，引出新细节，不选。E 选项，逻辑不对，(11) 句提到 Eilean Donan Castle，(12) 句说到 Welsh village，而 E 选项再次重提 Eilean Donan Castle。

由此可见，这道题只能选 B。

改进文章的题目由于背景文章的不同，题目也千差万别，有规律性的题目比重小。但是所有的题目都需要考生清楚文章脉络结构。因此，应对改进文章，学会有结构地读文章是重点，配以常见出题方法，运用适当技巧进行做题。

三、精练篇

2012 年 SAT 语法考点较为稳定，与往年相比，考法没有太大区别。做题的方法仍然需要大家在分清句子结构的前提下，与考点进行对应。常考考点仍然是动词、代词和逻辑主语等。只是对逻辑主语的考查较往年更为频繁。

与此同时，SAT 语法不断延伸着另一个趋势——考点越来越深入，也越来越需要考生灵活掌握分析句型的方法。比如，SAT 在 2011 年 1 月真题中考查了 only 的倒装情况。only 的倒装在历年真题中考查非常少，仅在 2006 年 1 月的真题中出现过一次，没有得到考生的重视，而 2011 年再次出题。2012 年，又一个小考点出现在考题中——名词性从句的虚拟。往年虚拟语气着重考 if 条件状语从句的虚拟，尤其是它们的各种倒装情况，而 2012 年的真题不但考了 if 条件状语从句的虚拟，在 2012 年 10 月的真题中对名词性从句的虚拟也有所涉及，考的是 request 的名词性从句虚拟情况。这种出题方法我们最早一次看到是在 2007 年 1 月的真题中。这种出题趋势就要求学生在备考时要更加细致，既要知其一又要知其二，对一些潜在的小考点要更加用心地准备，避免失分。再比如，在 2012 年的真题中，反复出现常见连接词的另一种介词用法。需要考生学会灵活进行句法结构分析。

分析 2012 年的题目，我们还发现，之前非常好用的一些技巧，在某些限定情况下变得不那么好用。比如 being 这个自杀词。being 在 2012 年之前属于非常规律好用的自杀词，除去 of being done 和 being than being 以外，其他情况下 being 都错误。但到了 2012 年，being 有了新考法。being 与其他的考点一起形成合考考点，在这种情况下，考生就不能不管三七二十一先把选项中的 being 全排除了之后再做题，而需要先看题目中的搭配问题，之后再进行决断。由此可见，所谓的考试技巧不能再毫无顾忌地使用，而要在稳中求胜。

下面就开始为大家解析 2012 年的真题。在看解析的过程中，不要肤浅地只看一个答案和考点，大家需要着重了解做题的思路和方法问题，掌握了正确的方法，才能举一反三，百战百胜！

2012 年 01 月语法真题解析

Section 6

Time 25 minutes 35 question

1. After she won a gold medal in figure skating at the 1956 Olympic Games, Tenley Albright attended medical school and becoming a surgeon.

A. school and becoming
B. school and became
C. school, also became
D. school, she became
E. school; also becoming

2. In his *Star Wars* films, director George Lucas is a contemporary mythmaker, plus being a master of special effects.

A. Lucas is a contemporary mythmaker, plus being
B. Lucas, a contemporary mythmaker, moreover
C. Lucas is a contemporary mythmaker as well as
D. Lucas, who is a contemporary mythmaker and also
E. Lucas is a contemporary mythmaker, he is also

3. Because of geothermal changes beneath Old Faithful, the frequency and duration of the geyser's eruptions are now more predictable.

A. eruptions are now more predictable
B. eruptions, they are now more predictable
C. eruptions are predicted more easier now
D. eruptions being easier to predict than before
E. eruptions, they can now be predicted more easily

4. Founded in 1919, the aim of the Bauhaus School was to create a revolutionary modern style that would unite art and mass production.

A. aim of the Bauhaus School was
B. aim of the Bauhaus School having been
C. Bauhaus School, whose aim was
D. Bauhaus School aiming
E. Bauhaus School aimed

5. Coleman Hawkins is often called the "father of the tenor saxophone" on account of he was the first to realize the instrument's expressive powers.

A. saxophone" on account of he was
B. saxophone" because he was
C. saxophone" due to him being
D. saxophone," which he was
E. saxophone," he was

6. The ship will not leave port until every one of the crew members have been examined by a physician and given a clean bill of health.

A. have been
B. has been
C. had been
D. are
E. were

7. It appears that either Jane or Marek will be elected to be presidents of the student union.

A. to be presidents
B. as presidents
C. presidents

D. for president

E. president

8. Apparently honoring the actor's desire for a flattering biography, there is no mention by the author of any of the scandals in which her subject was involved.

A. there is no mention by the author of any of the scandals in which her subject was involved

B. none of the scandals in which her subject was involved is mentioned by the author

C. none of the scandals in which her subject was involved are mentioned by the author

D. the author does not mention any of the scandals in which her subject was involved

E. the author mentions none of the scandals in which her subject were involved

9. An odd friendship in certain respects, she being an outdoor enthusiast and he a dedicated bookworm.

A. An odd friendship

B. As an odd friendship

C. Their friendship being odd

D. Theirs was an odd friendship

E. Having a friendship that was somewhat odd

10. Each of the men who attended the meeting were suspected to be a spy.

A. were suspected to be a spy

B. were suspected to be spies

C. were suspected of being spies

D. was suspected of being spies

E. was suspected of being a spy

11. The island of Madagascar, off the coast of Africa, is the habitat of more than 200, 000 species of plants and animals, many are not found anywhere else on the planet.

A. animals, many are not found anywhere

B. animals; many, not found anywhere

C. animals; of which many are not found anywhere

D. animals, many found nowhere

E. animals, finding many nowhere

12. This film (A) has earned (B) more money (C) from ticket sales (D) than have its closest competitor for the Best Documentary Feature Film Award. (E) No error

13. Dr. Ling (A) strongly encouraged (B) each of us (C) contacting our federal and state representatives and urge them (D) to increase funding for elementary school music programs. (E) No error

14. In the years (A) following the Second World War, as millions of soldiers returned to civilian life, the (B) demand for housing (C) will cause a massive (D) expansion of suburbs. (E) No error

15. (A) Because (B) they build nests on telephone poles as (C) readily as they do in trees, ospreys (D) adapting well to various environments. (E) No error

16. Whiptails, the (A) more speedier of lizards, are remarkable (B) creatures because in thirteen (C) of the known species the females (D) reproduce without mating with males. (E) No error

17. Scientists have discovered that walnut trees (A) respond to environmental stresses (B) such as drought (C) by producing significant (D) amounts of a substance similar to aspirin. (E) No error

18. For our hike, my two companions (A) and I (B) had chose to walk along the Appalachian Trail, (C) one of the (D) oldest and best-loved hiking paths in the United States. (E) No error

19. When people (A) see Lake Michigan for the first time, (B) he or she may think (C) that it looks (D) more like an ocean than a lake. (E) No error

20. (A) Teeming with hundreds of species of tropical fish, the (B) clear waters of the Caribbean Sea (C) provide a paradise (D) for scuba divers. (E) No error

21. The museum's latest exhibition, (A) featuring the works of several (B) relatively young artists, (C) have been praised (D) in reviews by influential art critics. (E) No error

22. The proposed environmental legislation (A) would devote billions of dollars (B) in federal grants (C) to conservation activities such as acquiring new public lands, preserving coastal habitats, and (D) to establish urban parks. (E) No error

23. Though the island (A) was formed by volcanic action (B) long ago, volcanic activity (C) still threatens its inhabitants (D) occasionally. (E) No error

24. Damselflies (A) closely resemble dragonflies (B) except that when at rest an adult damselfly holds its wings parallel (C) to the body, while a dragonfly holds (D) theirs perpendicular to the body. (E) No error

25. Each girl (A) in my class (B) wanted to have a quinceanera – an elaborate party (C) with plenty of food and dancing – to celebrate (D) her fifteenth birthday. (E) No error

26. Experts (A) who decipher ancient written languages (B) report that the Indus civilization's script is (C) more difficult to decode (D) than other civilizations. (E) No error

27. (A) Although both birds are known for (B) their distinctive songs, but the rufous songlark has a (C) sweeter song (D) than has the brown songlark. (E) No error

28. (A) Because sound waves (B) travel faster in liquids (C) than they do in gases, the speed of sound in water is greater than (D) that of sound in the air. (E) No error

29. Mary Whiton Calkins was an (A) imminent psychologist and philosopher (B) whose research (C) focused on such topics (D) as memory, consciousness, and dreams. (E) No error

Questions 30—35 refer to the following passage.

(1) The word "dinosaur" is derived from two Greek words meaning "terrifying lizard." (2) This fact might therefore lead you to think that today's reptiles—including lizards—are descended from dinosaurs. (3) Modern reptiles are probably not directly related to the dinosaurs. (4) Instead, it is birds, not reptiles, that most scientists now think are the dinosaurs' true descendants. (5) Some even say that birds are dinosaurs—dinosaurs as they have evolved over millions of years. (6) That claim may sound incredible. (7) It is based on extensive fossil evidence.

(8) A definite evolutionary connection between birds and dinosaurs was first uncovered in 1861. (9) The fossil was the etrified remains of an animal that in many respects resembled a small, winged dinosaur. (10)

There was, similarly, one astonishing difference between this fossil and any dinosaur fossil previously found. (11) The newly discovered animal's body was covered with fully developed feathers. (12) Scientists gave the creature the name Archaeopteryx, which means "ancient wing" in Greek, and declared it a transitional species between dinosaurs and birds. (13) Ancient Greek is a language that lends itself to forming logical compound words such as these.

(14) In the years since that discovery, scientists have unearthed other unique fossils. (15) These fossils show that dinosaurs and birds share many common skeletal features. (16) They reveal that several species of dinosaurs had what look like primitive feathers. (17) They indicate that some dinosaurs brooded over their nests, much as chickens do. (18) there is even fossil evidence that a few dinosaurs had four-chambered hearts. (19) That means that they may have been warm-blooded—just like birds but unlike modern reptiles, which are all cold-blooded.

30. In context, which of the following would be best to place at the beginning of sentence (3) (reproduced below)?

Modern reptiles are probably not directly related to the dinosaurs.

A. In any case,
B. It is believed that
C. As it turns out, though,
D. They now say that
E. Moreover, it appears that

31. In context, which is the best way to revise and combine sentences (6) and (7) (reproduced below)?

That claim may sound incredible. It is based on extensive fossil evidence.

A. As incredible as that claim may sound, it is based on extensive fossil evidence.
B. That claim may sound incredible, but he based it on extensive fossil evidence.
C. The claim is based on extensive fossil evidence, but they sound incredible to us,
D. That claim sounds incredible; it will need to be based on extensive fossil evidence.
E. Based on extensive fossil evidence, that claim may yet have sounded incredible.

32. In context, which of the following would be the most effective revision of the underlined portion of sentence (10) (reproduced below)?

There was, <u>similarly</u>, one astonishing difference between this fossil and any dinosaur fossil previously found.

A. obviously
B. however
C. they claimed
D. therefore
E. in retrospect

33. In context, which is the best way to deal with sentence (13) (reproduced below)?

Ancient Greek is a language that lends itself to forming logical compound words such as these.

A. Insert it immediately after sentence (1).
B. Delete it from the passage.
C. Change "is" to "was".
D. Change "lends" to "lent".

E. Change "these" to "Archaeopteryx".

34. In context, which of the following would be the most effective revision of the underlined portion of sentence (14) (reproduced below)?

In the years since that discovery, scientists have unearthed other unique fossils.

A. many others

B. many interesting fossils

C. more of these kinds of fossils

D. other fossils that confirm the link between dinosaurs and birds

E. fossils that provide evidence disproving these early findings

35. Where in the passage would the following sentence best be inserted?

It was then that a worker in a German limestone quarry accidentally discovered an unusual fossil.

A. Immediately before sentence (5)

B. Immediately before sentence (9)

C. Immediately before sentence (11)

D. Immediately before sentence (12)

E. Immediately before sentence (15)

长画线 Question 1 ~ 11

1. **选项**：B

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型，句中可以找到两个动词，分别是 won 和 attended，有一个连接词 after，句法结构无误。继续分析画线部分，看到本题的信号词 and。and 是平行并列结构的指示词，与它相同用法的还有 but，not only…but also，or。看到这些词时，要求前后结构一致。根据这一思路可知，and 前边是动词 attended，后边也应该是动词，因此选 B。C，D 选项，无连接词，run-on 句型。E 选项，有分号，而后句无动词，不平行。

2. **选项**：C

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型，主语是 director George Lucas，动词是 is，句子结构无误。plus being 是 SAT 语法中常见的错误搭配，因此 A 选项错。B 选项，全句没有谓语动词，是不完整句，错。C 选项，主语是 director George Lucas，动词是 is，同时 as well as 是比较结构的连接词，前后结构一致，前面是一个名词 a contemporary mythmaker，后面是另一个名词 a master。结构正确。D 选项，无主句的谓语动词，错。E 选项，run-on 句型，两个动词 is 和 is，却没有连接词连接，错。

3. **选项**：A

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型，句中两个动词，分别是 beneath 和 are，由一个连接词 because 连接，因此句子结构正确。继续分析画线部分，主句主语是 the frequency and duration，动词是 are，主谓一致，more predictable 比较结构正确，选 A。B，E 选项有代词，同时主语多余，错。C 选项，比较结构使用有误，无 more easier 结构。D 选项，being 自杀。

4. **选项**：E

考点：逻辑主语

解析：逻辑主语是 SAT 语法中技巧性极强的一类题目。考生需要将逻辑主语的基本结

构记忆清楚才能第一时间在题目中识别出来。这道题目考的是“done，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”的结构。看到 founded in 后，直接找可以与之对应的主语。根据这一思路，将 A，B 选项直接排除。剩 C，D，E。继续分析，逗号后边需要一个完整的句子，因此只能选 E。C，D 两个选项不是句子，错。

5. **选项：**B

考点：run-on 句型

解析：分析句型结构，句中有两个动词，分别是 is 和 was。因此需要连接词连接。on account of 相当于 because of，不是连接词，不能连接句子，A 错。C 选项 being 自杀。D 选项，which 逻辑错误。E 选项，无连接词，run-on 句型，错。B 选项正确答案，because 连接上下两句，表因果。

6. **选项：**B

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，句中有两个动词，will leave 和 have been，由连接词 until 连接。句子结构无误。继续分析画线部分，主语是 one，动词是 have been，由此发现主谓不一致，因此，A，D，E 错。C 选项时态错误。因此，选 B。

7. **选项：**E

考点：名词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，句中有两个动词，appears 和 will be elected，由连接词 that 连接。句型结构没有问题。继续分析画线部分，主语是 either Jane or Marek，动词是 will be elected，可知，宾语的部分应该是 president 而不是 presidents。因此 A，B，C 排除。剩 D，E。根据 elect 的用法，elect 是接双宾语的谓语动词，比如，We elected Obama president 变为被动是 Obama was elected president，中间不需要加任何介词。因此 D 错，选 E。

8. **选项：**D

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据题目特征可以辨识这是一道逻辑主语的题目，“doing，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”的结构。看到 apparently honoring the actors’ desire…，找可以与之对应的主语，A，B，C 排除。剩 D，E。E 选项，in which 从句中的 her subject 和 were 主谓不一致，排除。因此选 D。

9. **选项：**D

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，发现句中没有谓语动词，不是句子。因此 A，B，E 全排除。C 选项 being 自杀。D 选项，有动词，正确。

10. **选项：**E

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，句中有两个动词，attended 和 were，连接词 who，句型结构正确。分析画线部分，主句主语是 each，动词是 were，动词单复数错误。A，B，C 排除。D，E 选项，都有 being，因此 being 在这里不能使用自杀词的思路将其排除。D，E 选项在名词 spy 单复数上有差异，再看原题，spy 应该使用单数，因此 D 错，选 E。

11. **选项**：D

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，句中有两个动词 is 和 are，没有连接词，所以，A 错。B 选项，用了分号，需要平行并列，而后半句没有动词，错。C 选项，分号相当于一个连接词，of which 中的 which 是一个连接词，而后半句只有一个动词 are，因此连接词多余，错。剩 D，E。E 选项，finding many nowhere，逻辑主语错误，排除。答案只能选 D，found 做 many 的后置定语。这里考生需要注意，不要因为 found nowhere else on the planet 的结构中，插入了 nowhere else 就不会识别 found 的成分了。因为 found 在这个结构中有一个介词 on，是过去分词，不是谓语动词。

短画线 Question 12 ~ 29

12. **选项**：D

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构可知，这是一个由 than 引导的比较结构，主句的主语是 this film，动词是 has earned，从句的主语是 its closest competitor，动词是 have。句子结构无误，但是从句部分动词单复数有误。因此选 D。

13. **选项**：C

考点：固定搭配

解析：这是一道简单的固定搭配的问题，encourage sb. to do sth.，所以选 C。固定搭配一般是考试的难点，因为对考生的基本功有所要求，但是每次对固定搭配的考查只有 2 道左右，其中还不乏较为简单常规的搭配，所以考生只要宽心应对即可。

14. **选项**：C

考点：动词时态

解析：分析句型结构可知，这是由 as 当连接词，连接两个句子。主句的主语是 the demand，动词是 will cause，从句的主语是 millions，动词是 returned。句子结构无误，继续分析选项，从上文给出的信息可知 in the year following the Second World War，是过去时间点，没画线部分的动词 returned 也是过去时，因此 C 选项时态有误。

15. **选项**：D

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，句中有连接词 because，要连接两个句子。从句中的动词是 build，却找不到主句的谓语动词。由此可知，是不完整句。D 选项应该改成动词 adapt。

16. **选项**：A

考点：形容词比较级

解析：这道题是一道简单的形容词比较级的问题。在 SAT 语法考试中，对形容词比较级的考查比较简单，不需要考生知道一个特定的形容词到底应该加-er 表比较，还是用 more 表比较，只需要考生知道，这两种情况不能同时出现即可。从 2005 年开始至今，这种考法就没有改变过。但是考生在处理这类题目时常常由于粗心没有办法识别，失分是非常可惜的。这道题目，more speedier，将 more 和-er 同时使用，错误。

17. **选项**：E

18. **选项**：B

考点：拼写错误

解析：SAT 语法中会对拼写进行考查，虽然不是每次必考的考点，但是考生在这个项目上的失分不在少数，主要原因是复习的时候没有掌握相关考点的概念。SAT 语法不会出把 from 拼写成 form 的这类拼写错误。SAT 中的拼写错误一般都是在考不规则动词的过去时态和过去完成时态的拼写问题。历届真题中考到的有，write—wrote—written，run—ran—run，take—took—taken 等。我们会发现，考的基本都是较为常见的不规则动词。这道题目考查的是 choose—chose—chosen。一般而言，考查拼写错误的时候有一个 had 或者 have 的信号词，如本题，但不是绝对。例如 2011 年 1 月真题中的第 21 题：

Ancient documents (A) wrote on vellum, a form of fine parchment made of animal hides, must be stored under (B) carefully controlled conditions because changes (C) in humidity can be (D) damaging. (E) No error

这道题不像 2012 年 1 月的题目有 had 提示。需要考生自己分析句型结构。考生需要注意的是，不可以把有无逗号作为分析句子的唯一线索。这句话的主语是 ancient documents，动词是 wrote，继续往后看又发现一个动词 must be stored，在句中找不到连接词。由此可见这句话本身的结构是，主语是 ancient documents，谓语是 must be stored，而 wrote on vellum 是拼写错误，应该改成过去分词 written on 做后置定语。

19. **选项**：B

考点：代词单复数

解析：代词单复数是 SAT 语法短画线中代词最常见的考点。he or she 是单数指代，用于指复数名词 people，错误。这里有一个做题技巧，当看到短画线当中，he or she 或者 his or her 画线，直接选出。考法就是，用 he or she 或者 his or her 指代了复数名词。从 2006 年 10 月的真题开始，这种考法就没有变过。考生可以当做一个提示，帮助自己迅速锁定最可能正确的答案。

20. **选项**：E

21. **选项**：C

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 the museum′s latest exhibition，动词是 have been，立刻锁定 C 选项错误，动词单复数有误。

22. **选项**：D

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 legislation，动词是 would devote，句子结构正确。继续分析，看到平行结构的信号词 and，and 前是 doing，doing，and 后也应当是相应的结构而不能是 to establish，所以 D 错。

23. **选项**：E

24. **选项**：D

考点：代词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，句中有三个动词，分别是 resemble，holds 和 holds，有两个连接词，except that 和 while。句法结构正确。需要注意的是 when at rest 里的 when 在这里不是连接词，而是一个副词。句子结构正确后，开始看选项，D 选项中的 theirs 单复数有误，前边是 a dragonfly，不能用复数代词指代，所以选 D。

25. **选项**：E

26. **选项**：D

考点：比较结构

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 experts，主语后边有一个 who 引导的定语从句。主句谓语动词 report 后接一个由 that 引导的宾语从句，宾语从句中有一个比较结构。我们发现这个比较结构比较的是句子的主干成分——主语，因此要求比较中心要同类可比。比较结构前半部分的主语是 script 而后半部分是 other civilizations。比较中心不一致，因此选 D。

比较结构的题目在 SAT 语法短画线中也有一定的技巧性。一般而言，出现比较结构时，比较中心出现在哪个选项，就选择哪个选项。如本题，比较中心出现在 D，than other civilizations，就选择 D。同时，考生需要扩充比较结构的概念，有比较含义的一般都算做比较结构，除了常见的 than 以外，还有 as well as，differ，compare 等。

27. **选项**：A

考点：连接词

解析：句子是 although…but 的结构，错误。英语中，两者不能同时出现，有 although 没有 but，反之亦然。和这个相同的是 because…so，两者不能同时出现。因此 A 选项错误。同类考法在 2012 年 10 月的真题中也有所体现，请大家看题目：

Although Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit was far from (A) being the (B) only eighteenth-century scientist (C) to propose a temperature scale, (D) but his was one of the few that were widely used. (E) No error

答案一目了然，选 D，与本题属于同类考法。

28. **选项**：E

29. **选项**：A

考点：形近词混淆

解析：A 选项 imminent 语义有误，应该改成 eminent。形近词混淆在 SAT 语法中属于较难的考法。这类考题一般不容易识别，做题的思路一般是，当发现四个选项都没有问题时，有选项是单个形容词画线，此时，需要理解形容词的语义，看是否使用得当。在真题中，同属形近词混淆的考题还有 2008 年 1 月的真题和 2009 年 10 月的真题，请看题：

(A) For any mayor of a vast metropolitan area, an (B) understanding of current issues in all districts (C) is not only (D) desirous but also vital. (E) No error (2008.01)

全句结构没有问题，D 选项单个形容词画线，理解语义发现使用有误，应该是 desirable。

The acoustics of the ancient Greek theater at Epidaurus are (A) so good that an actor's

words，（B）even when whispered，are（C）auditory to（D）those sitting in the last row.（E）No error（2009. 10）

全句结构无误，C 选项单个形容词画线，理解语义发现形容词使用有误，应改成 audible。

改进文章 Question 30 ~ 35

30. **选项**：C

考点：阅读题

解析：根据上下文逻辑，第（2）句的意思是“人们会认为现在的爬行动物是从恐龙进化来的。”第（3）句的意思是“现在的爬行动物和恐龙没有直接的关系。因此两句之间是转折的关系。符合这个语义逻辑的只有 C 选项。

31. **选项**：A

考点：阅读题

解析：第（6）第（7）句的意思是“那种推断听起来有点难以置信。这是基于大量的化石作出的推断。”为了将两句连接，同时使语义逻辑正确，只有 A 选项正确。B 选项出现了一个上下文都没有的代词 he。C 选项，代词 they 没有复数指代对象。D 选项，两句的逻辑关系不明确。E 选项，两句没有连接词，结构错误。

32. **选项**：B

考点：阅读题

解析：第（9）句的意思是“这个化石是石化了的动物的遗体。遗体像是一个小的，有翅膀的恐龙。”第（10）句的意思是“这个化石与之前发现的其他恐龙化石有很大不同。”根据前后的逻辑，这里用 however 更为合适。

33. **选项**：B

考点：语法题

解析：这是一道不画线修改题，根据不画线修改的做题口诀“有错改错，没错删整句”，先来分析句子。经分析发现，句子的结构没有太大问题，看原文发现，这句话与全文内容不相符，属于多余的句子，因此选 B 选项，将整句删除。

34. **选项**：D

考点：阅读题

解析：根据上下文，发现，第（14）句的表达不够完整清晰。因此，最好的改动是将（14）句和（15）句句意连接得更加紧密。（14）句说“自从那个发现后，科学家又发掘出了其他化石。”（15）句说“这些化石显示恐龙和鸟在骨骼上也有相似性”。因此，使这两句连接最好的只有 D 选项，“科学家又发掘出其他的化石，这些化石验证了恐龙和鸟的演进关系。”

35. **选项**：B

考点：阅读题

解析：这句话的大意是“一个在德国的工人很偶然地发现了一块不同寻常的化石”。根据这个意思，我们带入原文发现，只有放在第（9）句前最符合逻辑。

Section 10

Time 10 minutes 14 questions

1. Just after returning home, the discovery was made that the basement had flooded during our absence.

A. Just after returning home, the discovery was made

B. Just after returning home, we discovered

C. Having just returned home was when we discovered

D. We returned home, just thereafter we discovered

E. Our discovery, just after we returned home,

2. Unlike other members of the bear family, which rely at least in part on a diet of insects, fish, mammals, or other meat, but pandas are primarily vegetarians and eat mainly bamboo.

A. but pandas are

B. but a panda is

C. pandas are

D. pandas, which are

E. that of a panda is

3. Maya Lin is best known for designing the Vietnam Veterans Memorial, but her work also including buildings, furniture, and sculptures in stone, wood, and glass.

A. but her work also including

B. but her work also includes

C. but her work also having included

D. her work also includes

E. then her work also includes

4. The Mansion House, once home to a thriving utopian community, remained closed to the public for over a century and reopening as a museum in 1987.

A. century and reopening

B. century, it reopened

C. century but reopened

D. century, when reopening

E. century, so reopening

5. Voicing their concern about heavy traffic near the school, the town council's plan to build a bypass was supported by local parents.

A. the town council' s plan to build a bypass was supported by local parents

B. local parents supported the town council's plan to build a bypass

C. a plan by the town council to build a bypass was supported by local parents

D. a bypass was planned by the town council and local parents supported building it

E. building a bypass was planned by the town council and supported by local parents

6. Diamond is harder than any other naturally occurring mineral, and the reason is because its carbon atoms are arranged in a strongly bonded crystal structure.

A. mineral, and the reason is because

B. mineral; the reason for it is that

C. mineral and because

D. mineral because

E. mineral by

7. Relatively little is known about the Suminoe oyster, which is new to the Chesapeake Bay, this has resulted in it being difficult for scientists to decide whether it may disturb the ecosystem there.

A. Bay, this has resulted in it being difficult

B. Bay, which have resulted in difficulty
C. Bay, and results in difficulty
D. Bay; they result in difficulty
E. Bay; as a result, it is difficult

8. The reason that many films succeed is that it reflects the private yearnings of audiences.

A. is that it reflects
B. is that they reflect
C. is because of reflecting
D. are because they reflect
E. are their reflection of

9. Dorothy Crowfoot Hodgkin used x-rays to discover the chemical structures of penicillin and vitamin B 12, winning a Nobel Prize for her work.

A. winning a Nobel Prize for her work
B. she then won a Nobel Prize for her work
C. this work won her a Nobel Prize
D. she won a Nobel Prize for her work
E. her work having won a Nobel Prize for her

10. Although the development of an all-electric airplane is more problematic and complex than an all- electric car, several aeronautical companies are working to design and build all-electric airplanes.

A. an all- electric car
B. all-electric cars
C. those of an all-electric car
D. an all-electric car being developed
E. the development of an all-electric car

11. In appearance much like the traditional yellow-fleshed Peruvian potato, Canadian researchers developed the hybrid Yukon Gold potato about 30 years ago.

A. Canadian researchers developed the hybrid Yukon Gold potato
B. Canadian researchers have developed the hybrid Yukon Gold potato
C. the hybrid Yukon Gold potato was developed by Canadian researchers
D. however, the hybrid Yukon Gold potato was developed by Canadian researchers
E. but the hybrid Yukon Gold potato was developed by Canadian researchers

12. One of the few marine mammals that makes use of tools are the Indian Ocean bottlenose dolphin, which uses sea sponges to stir sand on the ocean floor while hunting for prey.

A. that makes use of tools are
B. that make use of tools are
C. to make use of tools is
D. to make use of tools are
E. to make use of tools,

13. The Institute's exhibition of pictures of Arctic animals displays a firm commitment and a deep interest in the conservation of the world's endangered animal species.

A. displays a firm commitment
B. display a firm commitment
C. displays a firm commitment to
D. display a firm commitment to
E. that display a firm commitment

14. In addition to scientific talent, Santiago Ramon y Cajal (SRC) had artistic talent, as is evidenced by the excellent drawings in his papers about the nervous system.

A. as is evidenced by the excellent drawings
B. which the excellent drawings are seen to be evidence of and appeared
C. the excellent drawings which are evidence of this are

D. his excellent drawings as evidence, appearing

E. to be evidenced of in the excellent drawings

Section 10 Question 1 ~ 14

1. **选项**：B

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据逻辑主语的题型总结，本题考的是“after doing，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”的逻辑主语结构。看到 just after returning home，找主句主语与之相符的选项。根据这一思路，A 错。B 正确。C 改变句意，排除。D 选项，run-on 句型排除。E 选项 run-on 句型排除。

2. **选项**：C

考点：run-on 句型和逻辑主语

解析：本题是“unlike + 名词，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”的逻辑主语结构，名词与主语要一致，因此 E 排除。分析句型结构，发现句子没有主句，所以将 A，B，D 选项排除。因此，选 C。

3. **选项**：B

考点：run-on 句型或平行结构

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 Lin，动词是 is，接连词是 but。而 but 后不是句子，不符合平行结构的原则，因此 A 排除。B 选项正确。C 选项，having 自杀。D 选项，无连接词，run-on 句型，排除。E 选项，then 是副词，不是连接词，run-on 句型，排除。

4. **选项**：C

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 the Mansion House，动词是 remained。继续分析，发现平行结构的信号词 and，要求前后结构一致。and 前是 closed，所以之后也必须是动词，因此 A 错。B 选项，run-on 句型。C 选项，正确。D 选项，语义有误。E 选项，语义有误。

5. **选项**：B

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据题目特征可以辨识这是一个简单的逻辑主语的结构，即“doing，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”。看到 voicing their concern about…找与之对应的主语，主语正确的只有 B 选项，其他选项全排除。

6. **选项**：D

考点：固定搭配

解析：在长画线中，有一类常考的固定搭配的题目，即，如果选项中看到 the reason is because/the reason is that/ the reason is why 等一起画线时，直接找到选项中有 because 的选项就是正确答案。根据这个思路，只剩 C，D 选项。C 选项 and 多余，这道题选 D。这类固定搭配的另一种考法在本套题目的第 8 题，我们稍后讲解。

7. **选项**：E

考点：run-on 句型

解析：根据长画线做题技巧，首先排除 A 选项，因为有自杀词 this 和 being。分析句型结构，主句的主语是 little，动词是 is，后接一个由 which 引导的定语从句修饰 oyster。B 选项，which 使用有误，排除。C 选项主语不明，排除。D 选项，they 有代词放最后。E 选项，正确。首先，有分号连接两个句子；其次，这里的 it is 是 to decide …的形式主语。因此选 E。

8. **选项：**B

考点：固定搭配 + 代词单复数

解析：和第六题同类，是长画线的固定搭配考法。当发现句中有 the reason…的结构时，后边的部分画线（如题），后边画线的部分需要改成 be that。根据这个思路，C，D，E 排除，剩 A，B。比对 A，B 选项，代词单复数有差别，看原文，代词是指 films，所以需要用复数代词 they。因此选 B。

9. **选项：**A

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据题目特征可以辨识这是一个简单的逻辑主语的结构，即“主语 + 谓语 + 宾语，doing”。看到 winning a Nobel Prize…找与之对应的主语，原句的主语是 Dorothy Crowfoot Hodgkin，主语正确，选 A 选项。B，C，D 都是 run-on 句型，错。E 选项 having 自杀，错。

10. **选项：**E

考点：比较结构

解析：分析句型结构可知，这道题目考比较结构，比较的是主语 development，因此比较中心要一致，根据这一思路，than 后边比较中心一致的选项只有 E。

11. **选项：**C

考点：逻辑主语

解析：本题是逻辑主语“名词，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”的变体，即 like + 名词，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语。名词与主语要同类，题目中名词是 potato，主语也需要相对应，因此 A，B 选项排除，C 选项正确。D 选项，语义有误排除。E 选项语义有误，同时连接词 but 多余。

12. **选项：**C

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 one，动词是 are，可知，动词单复数有误，单复数正确的选项只有 C，因此选 C。

13. **选项：**C

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 the institute′s exhibition，动词是 displays，主谓一致。根据这一思路，选项 D 排除。选项 E，主句没有谓语动词，排除。剩 A，C。根据 commitment 的基本用法，commitment 后面需要加介词 to，所以答案是 C。

14. **选项：**A

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 SRC，动词是 had，连接词是 as，动词是 is。结构正确。选 A。B 选项，and 前后不平行，排除。C 选项，this 自杀。D 选项，结构混乱，排除。E

选项语义有误，排除。

2012 年 05 月语法真题解析

Section 6

Time 25 minutes 35 questions

1. Some researchers thinks that vertical farms—multistory greenhouses used for growing food—may benefit society by conserving land, recycling wastewater, and reduction in fossil-fuel emissions.

A. reduction in
B. they reduce
C. to reduce
D. reducing
E. through reduction in

2. An entire ant colony working together can solve problems, such as when they find the shortest path to a food source, that are impossible for an individual ant to solve.

A. such as when they find
B. such as finding of
C. such as finding
D. like the finding of
E. like their finding of

3. The brains of infants have many more neural connections than the brains of adults do, but they are much less efficient.

A. but they are much less efficient
B. but it is much less efficient
C. but the efficiency being lower
D. they are much less efficient
E. their efficiency is much lower, though

4. Arctic sea ice first freezes and it forms layers of ice crystals and these are both flexible and almost transparent.

A. Arctic sea ice first freezes and it forms layers of ice crystals and these
B. Arctic sea ice first freezes, as it then formed layers of ice crystals that
C. When arctic sea ice freezes first, it would form layers of ice crystals that
D. When arctic sea ice first freezes, it forms layers of ice crystals that
E. Layers of ice crystals occurring when arctic ice first freezes and

5. New research indicates that regular aerobic exercise can improve brain performance by its boosting of memory and cognitive processing speed.

A. performance by its boosting of
B. performance by boosting of
C. performance by boosting
D. performance, its boost of
E. performance, it boosts

6. Having already become famous for his Arctic expedition, polar explorer Fridtjof Nansen won the Nobel Peace Prize in 1922 for his humanitarian work.

A. Having already become
B. His having already become
C. He had already been
D. He was already
E. He, being already

7. Famous for their fantastic allegories, the works of Argentine author Jorge Luis Borges have been international acclaimed.

A. have been international acclaimed
B. have been acclaimed internationally
C. had their acclaim internationally
D. was acclaimed international

E. was acclaimed internationally

8. Some critics insist that Aleksandr Solzhenitsyn, although a great humanitarian, is only a mediocre writer.

A. although a great humanitarian, is only a mediocre writer

B. despite great humanitarianism is only mediocre when judged as to writing

C. even when being judged a great humanitarian, is a mediocre writer only

D. even when noted for his great humanitarianism, only a mediocre writer

E. while being a great humanitarian, but only a mediocre writer

9. Defying expectations that she pursued a career in medicine, Amy Tan chose to become a writer.

A. pursued

B. pursues

C. will pursue

D. would pursue

E. had pursued

10. Women in developing countries who want to start small businesses often benefit economically from microcredit, a practice in which she is lent modest amounts of money.

A. in which she is lent

B. when she is lent

C. whereby they are lent

D. they are lent

E. lending her

11. In the review of her latest play, the playwright was praised as highly for her innovative plotlines and because of her remarkable perception of audience expectation.

A. and because of her remarkable perception of

B. and because she was remarkably perceptive of

C. and was remarkably perceptive with

D. as for her remarkable perception of

E. as well as being remarkably perceptive with

12. When we (A) went on a camping trip last summer, my cousin and (B) me rowed (C) across a lake that lies (D) between two mountain peaks. (E) No error

13. (A) After studying plants that (B) thrive in warm climates and (C) those that do not, scientists (D) concluding that a plant's heat tolerance is determined by a particular gene. (E) No error

14. There (A) is basic differences between computer memory and human memory that (B) make it (C) unlikely that one can replace (D) the other. (E) No error

15. (A) Having been Leslie's teammate (B) for three basketball seasons, Claire knew that Leslie (C) had the experience and temperament (D) requiring of a good team captain. (E) No error

16. My uncle's house, like many others (A) built (B) during the 1950s, (C) were designed in the ranch style that (D) is still popular today. (E) No error

17. As the river current accelerated through the (A) narrowing canyon walls, the kayakers had to be (B) particular careful to avoid the rocks (C) that would (D) suddenly appear in front of them. (E) No error

18. A leopard's spots serve as camouflage not because they (A) were shaped like leaves and branches (B) but because they form a micropattern that enables the animal (C) to blend into (D) its woodland background. (E) No error

19. (A) Located on the firefly's lower abdomen (B) is a mass of luminescent cells in which oxygen (C) combines with a substance called luciferin (D) to produce the insect's distinctive glow. (E) No error

20. (A) In her fiction, Nella Larsen explored the minds (B) of her characters in great detail and (C) making them not only believable (D) but also fascinating to the reader. (E) No error

21. A human runner amazed the world in 2004 (A) by winning the Man versus Horse Marathon, (B) it has pitted hundreds of people (C) against horses every (D) year since 1980. (E) No error

22. Evidence discovered in regions that (A) were once part of the Roman Empire (B) suggest that the Romans used a covering (C) called a hipposandal (D) to protect their horses' hooves. (E) No error

23. If it (A) had been up to my sisters and (B) I, we (C) would have spent every summer vacation at our cousins' house, (D) which was right on the lake. (E) No error

24. Greenland's vast glaciers (A) contain (B) so much frozen water that should they melt, sea levels (C) would rise worldwide, (D) altering coastlines everywhere. (E) No error

25. The domed shell of a box turtle is (A) hinged at the bottom, (B) allowing the animal to close (C) their shell tightly (D) to evade predators. (E) No error

26. The leopard frog, (A) so named because of the irregularly shaped spots on (B) its back and legs, (C) are found throughout (D) much of North America. (E) No error

27. Commercial growers (A) tend to breed tomato plants for qualities (B) that increase the profitability of a crop, such as resistance (C) of disease, (D) rather than for flavor and nutritional value. (E) No error

28. (A) Historically, fewer than twenty percent of the pop songs (B) identified by music executives (C) as likely to be hits have performed (D) as expected. (E) No error

29. (A) That the country is now politically stable and economically robust (B) and will almost certainly continue (C) to do so (D) is no longer seriously doubted. (E) No error

Questions 30—35 refer to the following passage.

(1) Until recently, university librarians safeguarded rare books and manuscripts from all but the most scholarly hands. (2) Given the fragility of such materials, preservation should outweigh accessibility. (3) Inexperienced college students, nonetheless, were assumed to have little need to access rare holdings.

(4) But many librarians started questioning this. (5) They noted that certain rare works, such as those printed on animal skin, are sturdier than previously thought. (6) In the case of fragile documents, they reasoned, increased access could protect works. (7) It could reveal damage, such as mold growth, that might otherwise spread. (8) Thus, if students were given basic training in handling fragile documents, they could actually help preserve the collection by reporting damage. (9) After all, only through hands-on contact could a student fully observe and analyze the great care taken in binding and illustrating a first edition *Robin Hood* or the handwriting on

a letter from Anne Boleyn.

(10) Thanks to the librarians' shift in thinking, students in many universities are gaining just this kind of access to rare documents. (11) Literature students can analyze D. H. Lawrence's careful revisions to the text of *Sons and Lovers*. (12) Similarly, history students are able to turn the pages of magazines in which monthly installments of *Oliver Twist* were originally published amid ads for saddles and ointments. (13) This sort of access allows them to experience Dickens' novel in much the same way its first readers in the 1830s did. (14) Even art students benefited: they gained a deeper appreciation of artist-designed books—which are as unique as paintings or sculptures—by viewing them firsthand.

30. In context, which would be best to place at the beginning of sentence (2) (reproduced below)?

Given the fragility of such materials, preservation should outweigh accessibility.

A. Their thinking behind this was that
B. They now say that,
C. They believed that,
D. As it happens, though,
E. Moreover, it seems that,

31. In context, which is the best version of the underlined portion of sentence (3) (reproduced below)?

Inexperienced college students, nonetheless, were assumed to have little need to access rare holdings.

A. (as it is now)
B. in particular
C. however
D. broadly speaking
E. fortunately

32. In context, which of the following phrases would most effectively replace the word "this" in sentence (4) (reproduced below)?

But many librarians started questioning this.

A. them
B. the purpose of rare documents
C. the wisdom of this
D. all of that
E. the validity of such thinking

33. In context, which of the following is the most effective way to revise and combine sentences (6) and (7) (reproduced below) at the underlined portion?

In the case of fragile documents, they reasoned, increased access could protect works. It could reveal damage, such as mold growth, that might otherwise spread.

A. They reasoned that increased access to fragile documents, by revealing damage, could protect works
B. Even in the case of fragile documents, they reasoned, increased access could protect works by revealing damage
C. Consequently, in the case of fragile documents, they reasoned that increased access could protect works, revealing damage
D. But their reasoning was that in the case of fragile documents, increased access could protect works by revealing damage
E. Although increased access could protect fragile documents, they reasoned, in revealing damage.

34. In context, which of the following is the best version of the underlined portion of

sentence (14) (reproduced below)?

Even art students benefited: they gained a deeper appreciation of artist-designed books—which are as unique as paintings or sculptures—by viewing them firsthand.

A. (as it is now)

B. Benefited, having gained

C. Can benefit, gaining

D. Are benefiting, as they gained

E. Who benefit by gaining

35. Where in the passage would the following sentence best be inserted?

Moreover, the librarians realized that, by handling rare documents, students could gain much information not obtainable from electronic or printed copies.

A. Immediately after sentence (2)

B. Immediately after sentence (4)

C. Immediately after sentence (8)

D. Immediately after sentence (11)

E. Immediately after sentence (14)

长画线 Question 1 ~ 11

1. **选项**：D

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 researchers，动词是 think，后接由 that 引导的宾语从句。主语是 farms，动词是 may benefit。继续分析，看到平行结构的信号词 and。and 前是 doing，doing 的结构，因此 and 后也应该是 doing。因此选 D。

2. **选项**：C

考点：固定搭配

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 colony，动词是 can，后接 such as 的结构。而 such as 相当于介词，后边应该接名词性结构。所以 A 排除。B 选项，finding 是及物动词，不需要后边使用 of，所以 B 排除，同理，D 选项和 E 选项排除。C 选项，正确。

3. **选项**：A

考点：代词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 brains，动词是 have。but 引导平行并列句，主语是 they，动词是 are。分析选项，首先 C 选项，being 自杀，排除。D 选项 run-on 句型，排除。剩 A，B，E。我们说，在长画线中，有代词的选项放到最后才能选。但是这三个选项中都有代词，说明，能否使用代词不是这道题目关注的考点。对比 A，B 选项，发现上文中的代词指代的名词是复数，所以 B 错。对比 A，E 选项，根据简洁性原则，形容词 > 名词，可知，efficient > efficiency，因此选 A。

4. **选项**：D

解析：这道题给人的第一感觉是有些混乱，此时我们先使用一些技巧，用排除法来做题。A 选项，these 是自杀词，排除。C 选项，when 前后时态一致，when 的从句是一般现在，主句却是过去将来时，时态有误，排除。E 选项，主句没有谓语动词，排除。剩 B，D 两个选项。D 选项的 when 比 as 更加朴素，同时句子读着更为通畅，所以选 D。

5. **选项**：C

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 research，动词是 indicates，动词后接宾语从句，主语是 exercise，动词是 can improve。基本句型结构无误，继续分析。看到平行结构的信号词 and，要求结构一致，and 后边是 cognitive processing speed，前边必须是相应的结构，因此选 C。

6. **选项**：A

考点：run-on 句型和自杀词

解析：首先使用自杀词 having 和 being，将 B，E 两个选项排除。剩 A，C，D。分析句型结构，可知，主句的主语是 Fridtjof Nansen，动词是 won。因此，C，D 选项是 run-on 句型，排除。这道题选 A。注意，Having 放句首不自杀。

7. **选项**：B

考点：形容词副词修饰关系

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 works，动词是 have been。我们发现 A 选项的修饰关系有误，形容词 international 不能修饰 acclaimed，A 选项错。同理排除 D 选项。E 选项，动词单复数错误，works 不能和 was 对应，错。C 选项，有代词，同时修饰关系有误。因此选 B。

8. **选项**：A

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：首先，使用自杀词 being 将选项 C，E 排除。分析句型结构，主句主语是 some critics，动词是 insist，后接由 that 引导的宾语从句。从句主语是 Aleksandr Solzhenitsyn，动词是 is。句中两个逗号的部分是 although ＋名词。注意，although 在这里不是连接词，而相当于介词。由此可见，A 选项结构正确，选 A。B 选项，偷换概念，一个人不能是……主义“humanitarianism”，错误。D 选项，宾语从句没有谓语动词，错误。因此，这道题选 A。

9. **选项**：D

考点：时态

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 Amy Tan，动词是 chose。expectations 后接一个同位语从句，主语是 she，动词是 pursued。根据未画线部分给出的时态，chose 是过去时态，因此画线部分的 pursue 也需要是过去相应的时态，因此将 B，C 选项排除。剩 A，D，E。根据语境，原句想表达，Amy 选择了成为一名作家，而不是像大家期盼的那样将来成为一名医药工作者。因此，应该选 D，过去将来时。

10. **选项**：C

考点：代词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 women，动词是 benefit，宾语是 microcredit。在 microcredit 后接 a practice 的同位语，同位语后跟从句。从句中 she 的单复数与上文中的 women 不相对应，所以 A 错。根据这一思路，可以排除选项 B，E。剩 C，D。D 选项，run-on 句型，排除。因此只能选 C。需要注意，whereby 是连接词。

11. **选项**：D

考点：固定搭配和平行结构

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 playwright，动词是 was praised，继续分析，as. . . as 是固定搭配，因此排除选项 A，B，C。as. . . as 也需要结构平行，前一个 as 后的结构是for. . . ，因此后一个 as 的结构也需要使用相同的结构。选 D。E 选项不平行同时 being 自杀。

短画线 Question 12 ~ 29

12. **选项**：B

考点：格

解析：代词的格是短画线中会出现的一种考法。需要注意的是，格的问题除了动词之前主语的位置用主格，动词之后宾语的位置用宾格这个基本常识外，还需要知道，介词后边也要用宾格。这道题目代词格的问题较为简单，my cousin and me 出现在动词 rowed 之前，因此应该用主格，选 B。

13. **选项**：D

考点：run- on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，发现 after 后接一个名词 studying plants，plants 后接由关系代词 that 引导的定语从句，而在句点范围内，没有找到谓语动词，只是一个不完整句。因此，选 concluding，句子缺动词。

14. **选项**：A

考点：动词单复数

解析：在 SAT 语法中，there be 结构就近原则。如例句，There is a pen and some books on the desk. 及 There are some books and a pen on the desk. 在“there be”中，be 动词的单复数由紧挨的名词决定。因此动词单复数有误。选 A。

15. **选项**：D

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 Claire，动词是 knew，后接一个由 that 引导的宾语从句，从句主语是 Leslie，动词是 had。根据上下文可知，had 的时态没有问题。D 选项，requiring of 修饰关系有误，要改成 required by。

16. **选项**：C

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，句子的主语是 house，动词是 were，立刻发现，主谓不一致，选 C。

17. **选项**：B

考点：形容词副词

解析：分析句型结构，主句的主语是 kayakers，动词是 had，发现 B 选项，be particular careful 修饰有误，particular 是形容词，不能修饰 careful。

18. **选项**：A

考点：动词时态

解析：这是动词时态的基本考法。在全文都是现在时态，只有画线部分是过去时态又没有相应的时间状语的情况下，画线部分必错。因此选 A。

19. 选项：E

20. 选项：C

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 Nella Larsen，动词是 explored，继续分析看到平行结构的信号词 and，前后结构要一致。and 前是动词 explored，and 后是 making，不平行，所以选 C。

21. 选项：B

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，句子的主语是 runner，动词是 amazed，逗号后又发现了主语 it 和动词 has pitted。一句话里有且只有一个谓语动词。这句话有两个动词却没有连接词连接，因此选项 B 错。

22. 选项：B

考点：动词时态

解析：这是动词时态的基本考法，全句都是过去时，只有画线部分是现在时，画线部分的时态必错。因此选 B。这道题的出题方法与 18 题出题方法一致，可以对比两道题目一起看，印象更为深刻。除此以外，本句主语是 evidence，分析句子结构可知，动词是 suggest，动词单复数也不对。

23. 选项：B

考点：格

解析：在 to my sister and I 这个结构中，to 是一个介词，因此不能使用主格 I，要使用宾格 me。这道题目与 12 题属于同一考点，可以对比一起看。

24. 选项：E

25. 选项：C

考点：代词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 shell，动词是 is hinged，后接一个现在分词做状语的结构。选项 C，代词单复数有误，根据上文主语部分，可知名词是单数形式，因此 C 错。

26. 选项：C

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，句子的主语是 the leopard frog，谓语是 are，动词单复数错误。因此选 C。

27. 选项：C

考点：固定搭配

解析：Resistance 后的固定搭配是 to 而不是 of，所以选 C。

28. 选项：E

29. 选项：C

考点：代词

解析：分析句型结构，句子的主语是一个 that 引导的主语从句，动词是 is。主语从句中 to do so 的指代有误，所以选 C。

改进文章 Question 30 ~ 35

30. **选项**：C

考点：阅读题

解析：根据上下文，大学图书管理员开始保护珍贵图书和手稿。第（2）句说“因为这些资料都比较脆弱，所以更需要进行收藏”。根据逻辑意思，应该选 C，“他们认为”，他们指那些大学图书管理员。

31. **选项**：B

考点：阅读题

解析：根据上下文，“没有经验的大学生，被认为没有太大的阅读珍贵资料的需求”。看选项，A，C 选项都表示“然而”，不能选。D 选项，“广义上讲”，语义错误。E 选项，“幸运的”。这些都在逻辑上不顺畅。只能选 B，“尤其”。

32. **选项**：E

考点：语法题

解析：长画线部分的语法考点及做题技巧可以运用到改进文章中。因此，单独做代词使用的 this 自杀。C，D 选项一个单独的 this，一个单独的 that 都自杀。A 选项，them 是代词，放到最后才敢选。剩 B，E。B 选项语义错误。只能选 E。

33. **选项**：B

考点：阅读题

解析：两句合一。观察选项，看到选项在语义上做文章，因此，先根据上下文找出正确的语义逻辑。第（5）句说，“很多图书管理员发现，有一些，例如印在动物皮毛上的珍贵书籍要比想象中结实。”根据（6），（7）句的语义，前后不能是 consequently 或者是 although 的关系，所以 C，E 排除。A 选项，改变了原句的意思，排除。D 选项，根据改进文章的技巧，But 首字母大写放句首，选项一定不选。因此只能选 B。

34. **选项**：C

考点：语法题

解析：观察上下文时态，发现上下文都是现在时态，所以，A 选项时态不对。B 选项，having 自杀。C 选项，时态正确，同时 gaining 的结构逻辑主语正确。D 选项，有代词 they，放最后。E 选项，主句没有谓语动词。因此答案只能是 C。

35. **选项**：C

考点：阅读题

解析：根据句意，“然而，图书管理员意识到，为学生提供珍贵的原版文献，可以让学生获得从电子版本或者印刷版本中得不到的信息”。根据上下文逻辑，放在文中第（8）句后最佳。因为这部分在论证，为学生提供这些珍贵材料。一方面有助于保护书籍，另一方面也会让学生长见识。

Section 10

Time 10 minutes 14 questions

1. Although today's children certainly need to learn to type on computer keyboards, they also need to develop legible handwriting for doing homework, completing classwork, and to take notes.

A. and to take notes
B. and whenever taking notes is done
C. and taking notes
D. also taking notes
E. with taking notes being included

2. While visiting our cousins in the Spanish city of Granada, the palace and fortress called the Alhambra was seen, with its splendid courts, fountains, and gardens.

A. the palace and fortress called the Alhambra was seen, with its
B. the palace and fortress called the Alhambra was what we saw; it has
C. we saw the Alhambra, a palace and fortress; its having
D. we saw the Alhambra, a palace and fortress with
E. seeing the Alhambra, a palace and fortress with

3. Bees that are fed pollen from a range of different plants appear to have healthier immune systems than do bees that are fed pollen from a single type of plant.

A. plants appear to have healthier immune systems
B. plants and appear to have a healthier immune system
C. plants, appearing to have healthier immune systems
D. plants, which appear to have a healthier immune system
E. plants, their immune systems appear healthier

4. When driving in hilly areas on icy roads, snow tires are what you need on your vehicle for traction.

A. snow tires are what you need on your vehicle for traction
B. there is a need for snow tires on your vehicle for traction
C. what is needed for traction is snow tires on your vehicle
D. traction requires snow tires on your vehicle
E. you need snow tires on your vehicle for traction

5. In 1977 Tracy Austin became the youngest tennis player to win a professional tournament when she captured a title in Oregon aged fourteen years.

A. tournament when she captured a title in Oregon aged fourteen years
B. tournament aged fourteen years when she captured a title in Oregon
C. tournament when she captured a title in Oregon, being age fourteen
D. tournament when, at the age of fourteen, she captured a title in Oregon
E. tournament, she was fourteen years old when she captured a title in Oregon

6. Slightly more than 48 percent of the country's population lives in urban areas, where the remainder lives in rural communities.

A. areas, where the remainder lives
B. areas, with the remainder living
C. areas, the remainder lives

D. areas; but the remainder living

E. areas, the remainder is living

7. By removing vital nutrients from the water, a decline in Lake Michigan's fish populations was caused by quagga mussels.

A. a decline in Lake Michigan's fish populations was caused by quagga mussels

B. Lake Michigan's declining fish populations were caused by quagga mussels

C. Lake Michigan's fish populations are declining, caused by quagga mussels

D. quagga mussels having caused a decline in Lake Michigan's fish populations

E. quagga mussels have caused a decline in Lake Michigan's fish populations

8. Most inks used today contain chemical pigments that are nonbiodegradable and can prevent paper products from being recyclable, pigments made from algae break down more easily.

A. from being recyclable, pigments

B. from being recyclable, but pigments

C. to be recyclable, while pigments

D. being recyclable unlike pigments

E. so that they are not recyclable, however pigments

9. The transformation of an animal into a person, or the reverse, are parts of many a folktale.

A. reverse, are parts

B. reverse, are a part

C. reverse, is part

D. reverse; they are parts

E. reverse being part

10. A professional chocolate buyer recently said that his job is much easier than how it was for his predecessors because he can search the Internet for new chocolate products.

A. how it was for his predecessors

B. his predecessors

C. his predecessors who did it

D. those who preceded him

E. that of his predecessors

11. The port city of Shanghai, which along with Hong Kong is a leading Chinese banking and manufacturing center.

A. Shanghai, which along with Hong Kong is

B. Shanghai is, along with Hong Kong,

C. Shanghai, along with Hong Kong being

D. Shanghai, along with Hong Kong

E. Shanghai and Hong Kong are

12. Like her husband, Jackson Pollock, Lee Krasner was an Abstract Expressionist artist, and her and Pollock influenced each other's work.

A. her and Pollock influenced

B. she and Pollock influenced

C. she and Pollock having influenced

D. herself and Pollock influencing

E. the two of them both influenced

13. Despite living only to the age of forty, the music of John Coltrane, it inspired a generation of writers, musicians, and artists.

A. the music of John Coltrane, it

B. the music of John Coltrane

C. John Coltrane's music

D. John Coltrane created music that

E. John Coltrane created music, it

14. The swiftest animal on Earth, the cheetah can reach a top speed of about 70 miles per hour, it can maintain that speed for no more than 300 yards.

A. hour, it can
B. hour but can
C. hour, though they can
D. hour, but they can
E. hour, however, it can

Section 10 Question 1 ~ 14

1. **选项**：C

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型结构，主句的主语是 they，动词是 need，继续分析，看到平行结构的信号词 and，and 前是 doing，doing 的结构，因此选 C。

2. **选项**：D

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据逻辑主语的基本结构，可以立刻识别 while doing，“主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”的结构要求主语一致。看到题目 while visiting our cousins，立刻找可以与之一致的主语，只剩选项 C，D。C 选项有自杀词 having，因此选 D。

3. **选项**：A

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：主句的主语是 bees，动词是 appear。A 选项句法结构无误。选项 B，C，D 都没有谓语动词。E 选项主语有误，因此选 A。

4. **选项**：E

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据逻辑主语的基本结构可知，when doing，“主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”要求主语一致。题目中，when driving，找与之对应的主语，能够 driving 的只有主语 you，因此答案是 E。

5. **选项**：D

考点：排序题

解析：排序题是 SAT 语法的一个小考点，在 2009 年和 2011 年的题目中也出现过。排序题最主要的考法就是要知道后置定语到底在修饰哪个名词。分析句型结构，主句主语是 Tracy Austin，动词是 became，when 做连接词连接状语从句，从句中的主语是 she，动词是 captured。句子基本结构无误，但是，aged fourteen years 跟在了 Oregon 之后，修饰有误，因此 A 选项错。B 选项，aged fourteen years 跟在 tournament 之后，修饰有误，B 错。C 选项 being 自杀。D 选项避免了 aged fourteen years 的修饰问题，正确。E 选项，run-on 句型，错。因此只能选 D。

6. **选项**：B

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 48 percent，动词是 lives，逗号之后，由 where 连接另一个句子，主语是 remainder，动词是 lives。where 语义有误，所以 A 错。B 选项，去掉了后半句的连接词，并将动词改为 living，正确。C 选项是 run-on 句型，错误。D 选项有分号和连接词 but，相当于两个连接词，错误。E 选项，run-on 句型，错误。只能选 B。

7. **选项**：E

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据逻辑主语的基本结构可知，看到 by doing...，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语，两者主语要一致。题目中，by removing vital nutrients，主语只能是可以主动 removing 的名词，根据这一思路，排除 A，B，C 选项，剩 D，E。D 选项有自杀词 having，排除，因此只能选 E。

8. **选项**：B

考点：固定搭配

解析：这是一道考固定搭配的题目。我们知道 prevent 后的固定用法是接介词 from。因此选项 C，D，E 排除，剩 A，B。A 选项，是 run-on 句型，排除。因此选 B。我们发现，这里的 being 没有自杀。需要注意，在使用 being 自杀这一条的时候，要根据题目的情况灵活运用。跟这道题目出题方法相同的是 2012 年 1 月真题中的长画线第 10 题。大家可以将两道题对比着看，感受一下 being 自杀的例外情况。

9. **选项**：C

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句子结构，句子的主语是 transformation，动词是 are，因此主谓不一致。因此 A，B 排除。D 选项有代词 they，不可以。E 选项 being 自杀。因此答案是 C。

10. **选项**：E

考点：比较结构

解析：分析句子结构，主句的主语是 buyer，动词是 said，后接一个由 that 引导的宾语从句，主语是 his job，动词是 is。继续分析可知，这是一个比较结构。比较结构的题目，不能贸然通过汉语理解做题，而一定要注意分析句子结构，看前后比较的是什么成分。如果比较的主语、宾语、表语的主干成分，就一定要前后的中心同类可比。我们看出，这道题目比较的是宾语从句中的主语 his job，因此 than 后的比较中心要同类，能保证同类且数一致的只有选项 E，that 代 his job。

11. **选项**：B

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 the port city，却没有主句的谓语动词，因此 A 错。根据相同的思路，D，E 选项排除。C 选项 being 自杀。答案是 B。

12. **选项**：B

考点：代词

解析：主句的主语是 Lee Krasner，动词是 was，连接词 and 连接并列句，主语是 her and Pollock，动词是 influenced。her 是宾格，不可做主语，A 错。B 选项正确。C 选项，having 自杀排除。D 选项 herself 反身代词在 and 的这句话里没有反身对象，错误。E 选项多出 them 不可选。因此答案是 B。

13. **选项**：D

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据逻辑主语的结构可知，despite doing...，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语要求两者主语

要一致。题目中，despite living only to the age of forty，能与之主语对应的选项只能从 D，E 中选。E 选项有主语又有代词 it，结构有误，排除。答案是 D。需要注意，C 选项有一定的干扰作用，大家千万不要忘记 John Coltrane 后面的 ’s。这是在逻辑主语中常见的干扰选项。

14. **选项：**B

考点：run-on 句型

解析：分析句子结构，主句的主语是 the cheetah，动词是 can reach，继续分析，看到逗号后面连接了另一个句子，主语是 it，动词是 can。有两个动词却没有连接词连接，是一个 run-on 句型，A 选项排除。C，D，E 有代词的选项放到最后才能选。只剩下选项 B。而 B 选项加了连接词 but，同时又避免了代词的使用，因此答案是 B。

2012 年 05 月香港语法真题解析

Section 6

Time 25 minutes 35 questions

1. Because the United States in the early 1800s was largely rural, many inventions by women of that period relating to agriculture.

A. relating to

B. related to

C. that were related to

D. is related for

E. relates for

2. If the tongue was cooled or warmed, taste buds send signals to the brain that the brain interprets as tastes—such as sweetness or saltiness.

A. If the tongue was cooled or warmed,

B. When the tongue is cooled or warmed,

C. Upon the tongue cooling or warming,

D. By the tongue being cooled or warmed,

E. The tongue cooled or warmed, where

3. The extraordinary success of the Westside Preparatory School has been featured on television, written about in newspapers, and cited by leaders in education around the world.

A. School has been featured on television, written about in newspapers, and

B. School has been featured on television, written about in newspapers, and being

C. School, which is featured on television, being written about in newspapers and

D. School, having been featured on television, being written about in newspapers, and

E. School, when featured on television, and written about in newspapers and is

4. Uncomfortable in the school’s small van, it seemed to last forever for us to make the four-hour journey to our game.

A. Uncomfortable in the school’s small van, it seemed to last forever for us to make the four-hour journey to our game.

B. Uncomfortable for four hours in the school’s small van, the journey to our game seemed to last forever.

C. Uncomfortable in the school’s small

van, the four-hour journey to our game seeming to last forever.

D. Because we were uncomfortable in the school's small van, the four-hour journey to our game seemed to last forever.

E. Because of us being uncomfortable in the school's small van for almost four hours, the journey to our game seems to last forever.

5. Although Felicia's paintings are renowned for their intense beauty, some critics complain of how they lack from variety because they are essentially variations of the same forms and color patterns.

A. of how they lack from

B. about them lacking from

C. about them having lacked

D. that they were lacking

E. that they lack

6. Those who work late-night shifts find that taking a nap before the shift begins can dramatically increase alertness.

A. taking a nap

B. when naps are taken

C. if they take naps

D. if you take a nap

E. by taking a nap

7. After the most popular surfboard designer in the United States retires, many surfers were convinced of having no alternative but to ride boards of inferior design.

A. retires, many surfers were convinced of having

B. retiring, many surfers are convinced that they would have

C. retired, many surfers are convinced that they would have

D. retired, many surfers were convinced that they would have

E. retired, many surfers were convinced of having

8. From 1988 to 1995, Bonnie Blair thrilled the world with her dynamic speed skating and capturing more Winter Olympic medals than any other United States woman in Olympic history.

A. speed skating and capturing more

B. speed skating, which captured more

C. speed skating, she captured the most

D. speed skating and captured more

E. speed skating and captured the most

9. Oscar Micheaux differed from most other African American silent-film directors in his films they boldly tackled many controversial subjects of the day.

A. directors in his films they

B. directors, in his films he

C. directors; in his films which

D. directors in that his films

E. directors, films of his

10. The first Mexican to receive the Nobel Prize in Chemistry, demonstrating the threat of certain gases to Earth's ozone layer earned Mario Molina this award.

A. The first Mexican to receive the Nobel Prize in Chemistry, demonstrating the threat of certain gases to Earth's ozone layer earned Mario Molina this award.

B. The first Mexican to receive the Nobel Prize in Chemistry, Mario Molina earned this award by demonstrating the threat of certain gases to Earth's ozone layer.

C. Mario Molina, the first Mexican to

receive the Nobel Prize in Chemistry, demonstrated the threat of certain gases to Earth's ozone layer, which is how he earned this award.

D. Mario Molina received the Nobel Prize in Chemistry, the first Mexican to do it, and he earns this award with demonstrating the threat of certain gases to Earth's ozone layer.

E. Mario Molina was the first Mexican to receive the Nobel Prize in Chemistry, he earned this award by demonstrating the threat of certain gases to Earth's ozone layer.

11. Sam's photographs of the national forest express a deep interest and a respect for the beauty of nature.

A. express a deep interest

B. expresses a deep interest

C. express a deep interest in

D. expresses a deep interest in

E. that express a deep interest

12. The process (A) known as thermal conversion (B) is advantageous because (C) it not only breaks down plastic waste (D) and also converts it into oil. (E) No error

13. The lecture we (A) were required to attend was delivered (B) so poor that it seemed (C) to go on (D) not just for one hour, but for several. (E) No error

14. (A) Across the planet's (B) apparently smooth surface (C) run a faint pattern that reminds one (D) of cracks in an eggshell. (E) No error

15. Visitors are quick (A) to notice that the main building of the (B) critically acclaimed Denver Art Museum (C) consisting of geometric, titanium-clad projections that (D) resemble Rocky Mountain peaks. (E) No error

16. Thomas Edison (A) tries to gain access (B) to the inventions of Granville T Woods (C) by offering him a prominent position in his company, but Woods, (D) preferring his independence, declined. (E) No error

17. The (A) oldest examples of alphabetic writing discovered so far (B) are almost 4, 000 years old, but, because (C) they are written in an obscure alphabet, (D) it cannot be translated completely. (E) No error

18. The city (A) of Conway, Wales, (B) now surrounds the medieval walls and castle that (C) originally enclosed and protected (D) it. (E) No error

19. A brand name (A) first appeared on the outside of clothing in 1936, (B) where the Levi Strauss company (C) began stitching small red labels (D) bearing its name onto the back pockets of its jeans. (E) No error

20. Ants, butterflies, and bees (A) first appeared during the Cretaccous period, the (B) more recent of the three geologic periods (C) during which dinosaurs (D) lived. (E) No error

21. (A) Exquisitely fashioned gold objects (B) unearthed in southeast England (C) suggests that the early Anglo-Saxons (D) were not the crude barbarians of legend. (E) No error

22. In the course (A) of writing autobiographical sketches, several club members now (B) in their eighties are record-

ing childhood memories (C) and describing how people lived (D) long ago. (E) No error

23. The bald eagle was (A) once teetering on the brink of extinction, but (B) they have rebounded (C) dramatically in the (D) past three decades. (E) No error

24. Most climatologists (A) agree that global warming is (B) caused from greenhouse gases that (C) are continually (D) being released into Earth's atmosphere. (E) No error

25. Caricature in art and literature (A) involve portrayals (B) that exaggerate and distort prominent characteristics of people or things (C) so as to make the subjects (D) seem ridiculous. (E) No error

26. In the (A) novels she wrote for teenagers, Mary Stolz often concentrated on the (B) attempts of young protagonists (C) to come to terms with (D) his or her turbulent family lives. (E) No error

27. Within a few weeks (A) of leaving home, I (B) was working in New York City, where the buildings were taller, the (C) vioces louder, and the opportunities greater (D) than Montreal. (E) No error

28. For years historians claimed that pasta (A) was introduced to Europe (B) around 1295; (C) however, archaeologists have uncovered (D) what appears to be pasta-making devices that date back even earlier. (E) No error

29. (A) Endowed with powerful bodies, large claws, and (B) piercing teeth, mountain lions are (C) one of the most formidable wild creatures (D) native to North America. (E) No error

Questions 30 ~ 35 refer to the following passage.

(1) It is well known that parrots can imitate human speech. (2) But can parrots really communicate through language like they do? (3) In other words, do parrots really understand what they hear and say? (4) Based on her having observed a parrot named Alex, Dr. Irene Pepperberg, an animal intelligence researcher, has concluded that parrots really do have powers of human speech. (5) She found that, with some training, Alex was able not only to acquire a large vocabulary but also to use it intelligently. (6) In tests, Alex demonstrated the ability to distinguish more than a hundred objects of various colors, shapes, and textures. (7) To be precise, whenever they showed him a green wooden square and asked, "What color?" "What shape?" and "What matter?" Alex answered each question correctly. (8) It suggests, to Pepperberg at least, that Alex actually reasons with words.

(9) Some animal intelligence researchers argue that Alex's abilities are merely the result of classical conditioning, a technique made famous by Ivan Pavlov, who used it to train dogs to salivate at the sound of a bell. (10) But their argument is unconvincing. (11) Others point out that working intensively with just one animal is unreliable because it incurs the risk of the so-called Clever Hans effect. (12) Clever Hans was a horse that was said to be able to count but was really only responding to his owner's involuntary body language. (13) It is unlikely, though, that Alex benefited from this effect. (14) For in-

stance, the questions were randomly selected and spontaneously reworded by the various researchers who presented them to Alex.

30. In context, which is the best version of the underlined portion of sentence (2) (reproduced below)?

But can parrots really communicate through language like they do?

A. (As it is now)
B. like them
C. as they can do
D. the way humans can
E. as a human

31. In context, which of the following is the best version of the underlined portion of sentence (4) (reproduced below)?

Based on her having observed a parrot named Alex, Dr. Irene Pepperberg, an animal intelligence researcher, has concluded that parrots really do have powers of human speech.

A. (As it is now)
B. Due to such observations on
C. From her observations of
D. In order to observe
E. Thus, by observing

32. In context, which is the best version of the underlined portion of sentence (7) (reproduced below)?

To be precise, whenever they showed him a green wooden square and asked, "What color?" "What shape?" and "What matter?" Alex answered each question correctly.

A. (As it is now)
B. If they showed him a green wooden square, however,
C. Likewise, every time he was shown a green wooden square
D. When shown a green wooden square, for instance,
E. Even though he was shown a green wooden square

33. In context, which of the following phrases would most effectively replace the word "It" in sentence (8) (reproduced below)?

It suggests, to Pepperberg at least, that Alex actually reasons with words.

A. The complexity of the questions
B. The accuracy of the responses
C. The variety of objects tested
D. Recent research
E. Common sense

34. In context, which of the following would best be placed immediately after sentence (10)?

A. A comparison of Pepperberg's credentials with those of Ivan Pavlov
B. A description of the differing ways in which dogs and parrots produce sounds
C. A precise definition of the term "intelligence"
D. A list of the words that Alex learned to speak
E. An explanation of how Alex's language training differed from classical conditioning

35. Where is the best place to insert the following sentence?

Great pains were taken to ensure that Alex received no unintended cues from Dr. Pepperberg or her research assistants.

A. Immediately after sentence (4)
B. Immediately after sentence (6)
C. Immediately after sentence (7)
D. Immediately after sentence (9)
E. Immediately after sentence (13)

长画线 Question 1 ~ 11

1. **选项**：B

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，首先看到从句的引导词 because，从句中的动词是 was，继续分析发现主句中没有谓语动词。根据这一思路，排除 A，C 选项。剩 B，D，E。对比上下文时态，应该用过去时态，因此 D，E 排除，选 B。

2. **选项**：B

考点：连接词语义

解析：根据选项特征，发现选项在连接词上做文章。因此，需要了解语义关系。A 选项，“if...”是条件关系，同时，前后句的时态不对，排除。B 选项，“when...”，前后时态对应，语义逻辑对应，正确。C 选项，语义有误。D 选项，being 自杀。E 选项，前后时态不对，语义不合逻辑。

3. **选项**：A

考点：技巧题

解析：根据语法长画线技巧，B，C，D 属于 being 自杀的情况，排除。同时 D 选项里的 having 也属于自杀的情况。剩下 A 和 E 选项。E 选项句子没有谓语动词，是不完整句，错误。选 A。A 选项，主语是 success，动词是 has been，后接由 and 连接的平行结构，done，done，and done。

4. **选项**：D

考点：逻辑主语

解析：了解逻辑主语的基本考法后，我们可以看出这道题目考的是“形容词，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”的结构，要求形容词要可以修饰主语。根据这个思路，A 选项，uncomfortable...，it...，it 不知道指代谁，更无法判断是否可以被 uncomfortable 修饰，所以 A 错。B 选项，uncomfortable...，the journey to our game...，journey 无法由 uncomfortable 修饰，B 错。C 选项和 B 选项有相同的问题，同时 C 选项没有主句，C 错。E 选项 being 自杀，E 错。D 选项，由 because 连接了两个句子，were 和 seemed，结构正确。选 D。

5. **选项**：E

考点：固定搭配

解析：根据 complain 的用法，complain 后可以接 about 或者 that，因此 A 选项排除。B 选项，lack 后不用 from 的搭配，排除。C 选项 having 自杀，排除。D 选项，时态错误，排除。因此选 E。

6. **选项**：A

解析：根据对句子结构的分析，主语是 those who work late-night shifts，动词是 find，后接由 that 引导的宾语从句，主语是 taking a nap before the shift begins，动词是 can。句子结构正确，语义逻辑也正确，A 选项正确。B 选项，宾语从句的主语是 when naps are taken，虽然句子结构正确，但是句子逻辑不正确。C，D 选项有代词，放最后。E 选项 by doing 是介宾结构，介宾不可以做主语。所以这道题选 A。

7. **选项**：D

考点：动词时态

解析：A，E 选项，having 自杀，排除。B 选项，after 作为一个连接词使用，retiring 不是谓语动词，错误。C 选项，从句 after 中的时态是一般过去，主句是一般现在，时态有误，错误。D 选项，after 连接两句话，时态都是过去时，正确。

8. **选项**：D

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型结构，主句的主语是 Bonnie Blair，动词 thrilled，画线部分看到平行并列结构的信号词 and。平行结构中，要求前后结构要一致，前句是动词 thrilled，and 后也应该是相应的动词，符合这一要求的只有 D，E 选项。两者比较应该用比较级，所以 E 选项错误。选 D。

9. **选项**：D

选项：run-on 句型

解析：分析句型结构，句中看到两个动词，differed 和 tackled，但是句中没有连接词，因此是 run-on 句型。B，E 选项是相同的结构问题，错误。C 选项，有一个分号，又有一个 which，句子结构错误。答案只剩 D 选项，in that 相当于 because 可以当连接词使用，因此选 D。这里需要注意，我们在长画线的简洁性原则中讲到过，SAT 长画线中喜欢选择简单常见的表达，因此就有 because 比一切表示因果含义的连接词都要优先选择的规律。但是，这个规律的前提是，要在排三剩二，只剩两个可能选项，选择最优选项的时候来使用。不可以没有看清题目，第一步就通过简洁性原则将 in that 排除。

10. **选项**：B

考点：run-on 句型

解析：分析句型结构，发现原句结构有误，动词是 earned，前面的部分“the first Mexican... in Chemistry”和“demonstrating the threat... layer”无法同时做主语，所以结构混乱，A 选项错。B 选项是“名词，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”的逻辑主语结构，主语是 Mario Molina，动词是 earned，后边是宾语。名词部分是 the first Mexican... 于主句主语同类，因此，B 选项结构正确，是正确答案。C 选项，句中有两个动词，由关系代词 which 连接，但是 which 不可以指代整件事，C 选项错误。D 选项，and 前后时态不一致，却没有相应的时间状语提示。同时选项中有代词 it。E 选项，有两个动词，分别是 was 和 earned，中间没有连接词连接，是一个 run-on 句型，错误。

11. **选项**：C

考点：动词单复数及固定搭配

解析：分析句子结构，主语是 photographs，动词是 express，单复数搭配正确。根据这一思路，可能的选项只有 A，C。对比 A，C 选项，interest 的固定搭配要用 in，形成 a interest in and a respect for 的平行结构，因此选 C。

短画线 Question 12 ~ 29

12. **选项**：D

考点：固定搭配

解析：这道题目是 not only. . . but also 的固定搭配，因此选 D 选项。

13. 选项：B

考点：形容词副词

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 lecture，后接一个省略了关系代词的定语从句“we were required to attend”，主句的动词是 was delivered，so. . . that 当做连接词接另一个句子，而 so poor 的修饰关系有误，poor 在这里是要修饰 was delivered，形容词不能修饰动词，所以应该改成 poorly，选 B 选项。

14. 选项：C

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，看到句中的动词是 run，而在 run 之前“Across the planet's apparently smooth surface”是一个介宾短语，不可以做主语。在英语句法结构中，做主语的只能是名词，或名词性结构。因此可知，这是一个倒装的情况：动词前找不到主语成分，要到动词之后去找。run 之后的名词是 a faint pattern，是一个单数名词，因此 C 选项错误，应该是 runs。需要注意，倒装这个考点是动词单复数中较难的一种，因为引发词变幻多样，不容易识别。破解这类题目，更需要使用扎实的句法分析基本功，以不变应万变。

15. 选项：C

考点：不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，主句的主语是 visitors，系动词是 are，后接 notice 的宾语从句，从句的主语是 the main building，却无法找到从句的谓语动词。因此是不完整句的错误，要把 C 选项 consisting 改为 consists 才正确。这道题目分析句型时需要注意的问题是，to notice 是一个整体结构，叫非谓语动词。我们在书中为大家阐述过，非谓语动词在句中不能做谓语。但是，非谓语动词是由动词变来的，仍然保留动词的部分本性，即它需要动作发出者和动作的接受者。这就是为什么“to notice”中的 notice 后能有一个宾语从句的原因。

16. 选项：A

考点：动词时态

解析：分析句子结构，主句的主语是 Thomas，动词是 tries，由 but 做连接词连接另一个句子，主语是 Woods，动词是 declined。句子结构是正确的，但是根据对上下文的对比可以发现，未画线部分的动词时态是过去时态，同时，主句部分没有找到表示现在的时间状语，可知，选项 A 中的 tries 的时态有误。

17. 选项：D

考点：代词单复数

解析：分析句子结构，主句的主语是 examples，动词是 are，动词的单复数正确。继续分析，由 but 做连接词，连接下一句话，而下一句话中又套了一个由 because 引导的状语从句，状语从句的主语是 they，动词是 are。they 指代 examples，代词的单复数正确，are 和 they 主谓一致。而另一个句子，主语是 it，动词是 cannot be。根据上下文，it 在这里和 they 的指代是一样的，也指 examples，因此 it 的单复数错误。

18. 选项：E

19. 选项：B

考点：连接词语义

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语 a brand name，动词 appeared。后接一个由 where 引导的定语从句，主语是 the Levi Strauss Company，动词是 began。经过分析，句子结构无误，再分析句意，关系副词 where 在引导定语从句时，需要指前面的地点，因此 where 使用有误，要改成 when。

20. **选项**：B

考点：形容词比较级最高级错

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 ants，butterflies，and bees，动词是 appeared，因为 appear 是一个不及物动词，后接一个 during the Cretaceous period 介宾短语做状语。逗号后 the more recent... 是 the Cretaceous period 的同位语。句子结构正确，但是，the more recent of the three geologic periods 是三者比较，不可以用比较级，应该改成 most。

21. **选项**：C

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 fashioned gold objects，动词是 suggests，动词单复数错误，应该将 suggests 改成 suggest。这道题是一个简单的动词单复数问题，但是里面包含一个 SAT 常见的出题陷阱。在出动词单复数的题目时，SAT 经常会把主语和谓语中间加入修饰限制成分，加入换行等方式来隔断考生的思路。加入的修饰限制成分有时候中间会有逗号隔开，有时候不会隔开。所以考生切不可以用逗号来识别句子结构。这道题目的难点在于，如果不是扎实掌握了句子结构，很容易将 fashion gold objects 后面的 unearthed in 分析成句子的谓语动词，并按照这一逻辑，使全句结构都陷入混乱。我们在书中详细的讲过，要学会区分 v-ed 到底是过去时态还是过去分词。因为如果是过去时态，那么在句中仍然是谓语动词；如果是过去分词，那么在句中是非谓语，不是谓语动词。请大家牢记我们的区分方法，v-ed 后面如果加的是名词，它就是过去时态，在句中做谓语。除了当题目中出现的动词是 elected，named，called 时。v-ed 后面如果加的是介词，它就是过去分词，在句中不是谓语动词。除了这个动词本身是不及物动词的情况。根据这个规则，我们很容易看出，unearthed in 这个结构不是谓语动词，而是过去分词做后置定语，是一个非谓语结构。

22. **选项**：E

23. **选项**：B

考点：代词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，主句的主语是 the bald eagle，动词是 was，后接由 but 连接的另一个句子，主语是 they，动词是 have rebounded。句子结构正确，但是，根据上下文，they 指的是 the bald eagle，是单数，因此要改成 it。

24. **选项**：B

考点：固定搭配

解析：根据对介词使用的基本了解可以知道，is caused 后面应该用 by。注意，这道题目会有学生误选选项 D，认为 being 自杀。一定要注意，自杀词的使用范围是在长画线当中，短画线不在使用范围内。在短画线中，唯一可以使用的自杀词只有 plus being 的结构。

25. **选项**：A

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，句子的主语是 caricature，动词是 involve，可知，单复数错误。因此选 A。

26. **选项**：D

考点：代词单复数

解析：根据为大家总结的解题技巧，可知，在短画线中，如果看到 his or her 合起来画线，一般都错。错误方式是，用 his or her 来指代复数名词。这道题目 his or her 画线，用它指代了 young protagonists，单复数错误，因此选 D。

27. **选项**：D

考点：比较结构

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 I，动词是 was，后接由 where 引导的定语从句，定语从句中有一个 and 的“句子，句子 and 句子”的平行并列结构，这个平行结构中，后两个句子省略了系动词。因此主语分别是 the buildings，the voices，the opportunities。而比较结构 than 后是 Montreal。由此可知，前后的比较中心不一致。因此选 D。

28. **选项**：D

考点：动词时态

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 historians，动词是 claimed，后接 that 引导的宾语从句，从句主语是 pasta，动词是 was introduced。从句后接分号，分号可以连接两个句子，因此分号后的句子主语是 archaeologists，动词是 have uncovered，后接由 what 引导的宾语从句 what appears to be，devices 后接一个由 that 引导的定语从句。可以看出，句中有五个动词四个连接词，句子结构正确。但是，根据上下文，“that date back even earlier”可知，appears 的时态有误。

29. **选项**：C

考点：代词单复数

解析：分析句子结构，主语是 mountain lions，动词是 are，句子结构无误。但是，句中用 one 这个单数指代来指复数名词 mountain lions，代词单复数有误，要将 one 改成 ones。

2012 年之前的真题没有见到过对 one 的这种考察，最喜欢考的是代词 one 和代词 you 不可以互相指代。2012 年 one 的这种考法第一次见，考生需要注意。

改进文章 Question 30 ~ 35

30. **选项**：D

考点：语法题

解析：这是一道语法题。我们说在长画线及改进文章中，有代词的选项最后选。题目中画线部分有代词 they，所以不能用。A 选项放后。相同的道理 B，C 选项都不可以要。E 选项，表意不正确。D 选项，是正确答案。表示“鹦鹉能像人类一样通过语言进行沟通。”其中，the way 可以当做连接词使用，因此句子结构和意思都是正确的。

31. **选项**：C

考点：语法题

解析：A 选项，having 自杀。B 选项，逻辑有误。C 选项，正确。D 选项，逻辑有误。

E 选项，逻辑有误。

32. **选项：**D

考点：语法题

解析：根据长画线和改进文章语法题共同的做题思路，有代词的选项放到最后才能选。因此，A 选项中有代词 they，放到最后。B 选项有代词 they，放到最后。C 选项，句点内有两个动词，分别是 was shown 和 answered，却没有连接词连接，是一个 run-on 句型，错误。D 选项，when done and done，S + V + O 的结构。句子结构正确，且逻辑主语正确。E 选项，语义有误。

33. **选项：**B

考点：阅读题

解析：这句话的意思是“它表明，Alex 理解这些词的意思”，根据上下文逻辑可以得知，it 指的是 Alex 可以正确地反应出问题的答案。所以选 B 选项。

34. **选项：**E

考点：阅读题

解析：题目问，在第（10）句后可以加入什么句子。回原文看到第（9）句和第（10）句，大意是“一些动物智能研究者质疑 Alex 可以回答这些问题的能力仅仅是一种条件反射。就如 Ivan Pavlov 给狗做的条件反射实验一样，通过训练，狗一听到铃声就开始分泌唾液。但是他们的这一论调不是很有说服力。”第（10）句后，解释 Alex 的语言训练和 Ivan 对狗的条件反射训练有什么不同，符合上下文逻辑，同时支持第（10）句。因此选 E。

35. **选项：**E

考点：阅读题

解析：题目的句子“Dr. Pepperberg 和她的研究助理们花了很大的力气，以保证 Alex 没有接受到任何有指向性的线索。”根据上下文逻辑，这句话应该接在（13）句后。（13）句前说的是关于 Hans 的实验。这个被大家认为是可以数数的马，其实是从他主人的身体语言中获得了信息。因此，题目中的这句话，放在这个例子之后是符合上下文逻辑的。

Section 10

Time 10 minutes 14 questions

1. Calvin was surprised <u>by discovering that although</u> his sister had never played chess before, she could beat him without much effort.

A. by discovering that although

B. to discover that although

C. by the discovery that whether

D. with his discovery that until

E. when he discovers that as

2. <u>Jacqueline was weak ever since she came</u> down with the flu three weeks ago.

A. Jacqueline was weak ever since she came

B. Jacqueline is weak ever since she came

C. Jacqueline, weak ever since coming

D. Jacqueline is weak, this has been since coming

E. Jacqueline has been weak ever since she came

3. By definition, an isosceles triangle is <u>when a triangle</u> has two sides of equal length.

A. when a triangle
B. if the triangle
C. one where it
D. one of those which
E. a triangle that

4. Postponing it because of stormy weather, the D-Day invasion of France began at 6: 30 A. M. on June 6, 1944.

A. Postponing it because of stormy weather,
B. It being postponed due to stormy weather,
C. Having been postponed because of stormy weather,
D. Stormy weather had postponed it, because of this
E. Due to stormy weather postponing it,

5. Melville Herskovits' research on the preservation of African cultures in America contradicted the work of E. Franklin Frazier, who postulated that conditions in America caused enslaved Africans into their developing an entirely new culture.

A. America caused enslaved Africans into their developing
B. America caused enslaved Africans to develop
C. America, so caused enslaved Africans to develop
D. America, they caused enslaved Africans developing
E. America, which caused enslaved Africans to develop

6. Sometimes in Colorado it snows heavily in the mountains whereas remaining sunny, warm, and dry on the plains.

A. mountains whereas remaining sunny, warm, and dry on the plains
B. mountains while the plains remain sunny, warm, and dry
C. mountains, the plains remain sunny, warm, and dry
D. mountains, it remains sunny, warm, and dry on the plains
E. mountains, but remained sunny, warm and dry in plains

7. Group discussions will be held each afternoon on such topics as education, public policy, to communicate clearly, and cultural diversity.

A. topics as education, public policy, to communicate clearly
B. topics, which are education, public policy, to communicate clearly
C. topics, education, public policy, clear communication
D. a topic as education, public policy, to communicate clearly
E. topics as education, public policy, clear communication

8. Nylon, created wholly out of inorganic chemicals, was the world's first truly synthetic fiber when it was introduced in 1938.

A. created wholly out of
B. wholly created through using
C. it was created wholly from
D. which has been created wholly by
E. out of which it was created from

9. In the event that the survey results confirm our assumptions that we made, there will be a change implemented by us in our advertising.

A. In the event that the survey results confirm our assumptions that we made, there will be a change implemented by us in our advertising.
B. When the event occurs that the survey

results confirm our assumptions, there will be advertising changes implemented.

C. Having the survey results confirm our assumptions will lead to advertising changes by us.

D. To have the survey results confirming our assumptions, we will change our advertising because of it.

E. If the survey results confirm our assumptions, we will change our advertising.

10. Swimmer Mark Spitz was the most decorated athlete of the 1972 Summer Olympic Games, he won seven gold medals.

A. Games, he won seven gold medals

B. Games, winning seven gold medals

C. Games by winning seven gold medals

D. Games; therefore, he won seven gold medals

E. Games; seven gold medals were won by him

11. A pionner in the nursing field, Florence Nightingale's insistence on sanitary conditions in hospitals increased patients' survival rates considerably.

A. Florence Nightingale's insistence on sanitary conditions in hospitals

B. Florence Nightingale's insistence on sanitary conditions in hospitals, which

C. Florence Nightingale insisted on sanitary conditions in hospitals and thereby

D. By insisting on sanitary conditions in hospitals is how Florence Nightingale

E. The sanitary conditions in hospitals that Florence Nightingale insisted on

12. Perched atop a sandstone mesa, Acoma Pueblo is the oldest inhabited community in North America, currently a population of about fifteen families.

A. America, currently a population of

B. America, and its population currently

C. America, currently its population is

D. America, whose current population is

E. America and currently has a population of

13. After college Susan King founded a publishing company but eventually reduced her role in the firm to pursue her interests in storytelling and art by creating her own books.

A. company but eventually reduced

B. company but eventually reducing

C. company, and eventually reducing

D. company, she eventually reduced

E. company, however, she eventually reduced

14. Were they to be told the purpose of the study, the participants might find it difficult to answer the questions spontaneously.

A. Were they to be told

B. If they would have been told

C. With it being told them

D. Telling them

E. By telling them

Section 10 Question 1 ~ 14

1. **选项：** B

考点： 固定搭配

解析： be surprised to do sth. ，因此答案选 B。

2. **选项**：E

考点：动词时态

解析：在动词时态的考查中，SAT 有一个绝对对应的时态关系，即，看到 since，主句用现在完成时，从句用一般过去时。ever since 也同样适用。根据这一思路，直接选择答案 E。

3. **选项**：E

考点：连接词

解析：通过观察选项，发现选项在连接词上做文章，因此需要了解句意。根据句意可知 A，B 选项不符。C，D 选项有代词 one，不要。因此选 E。

4. **选项**：C

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据逻辑主语的基本结构，本句是“doing，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”的结构。doing 的主语要和主句的主语一致。主句的主语是 the D-Day invasion，无法主动去 postpone，所以 A 选项排除。B 选项有 being 自杀，排除。C 选项，Having been postponed，Having 首字母大写放句首不自杀。逻辑主语正确。D 选项，this 自杀。E 选项，有代词 it。

5. **选项**：B

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 research，谓语动词是 contradicted，逗号后，who 引导一个定语从句，主语是 who，动词是 postulated，宾语接由 that 引导的宾语从句，主语是 conditions，动词是 caused。分析选项，C，D，E 选项排除，因为宾语从句中没有谓语动词，是不完整句。剩 A，B。根据固定搭配，A 错。

6. **选项**：B

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 it，动词是 snows，后接连接词 whereas。A 选项，连接词后没有动词，结构错误。B 选项，从句由 while 连接，主语是 the plains，动词是 remain，句子正确。C 选项，逗号连接两个句子，run-on 句型，错误。D 选项，同 C 选项的错误。同时，选项中有代词 it。E 选项，but 连接词平行结构。但前后时态不正确。but 前是一般现在时态，but 后是过去时态，却没有相应的时间状语。因此，选 B。

7. **选项**：E

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 discussions，动词是 will be held。and 是平行结构的信号词，and 后是名词，and 前也需要是名词。符合这一规则的只有 E 选项。

8. **选项**：A

考点：综合考点

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 Nylon，动词是 was。两个逗号中间隔开的部分是 created 的过去分词做插入结构。A 选项结构正确，同时 created out of 的搭配正确。B 选项，using 使用多余。C 选项，run-on 句型，没有连接词连接。D 选项，which 后 has been 的时态与上下文不符。E 选项，有代词 it。

9. **选项**：E

考点：绕晕题

解析：根据 SAT 语法的出题套路，当发现句子整体画线，或 A，B，C，D，E 五个选项开头都不一致时，这道题目很有可能是绕晕题。绕晕题的出题思路是，通过不断变换选项，使考生思路混乱，不知道到底在考什么。因此，这类题目的应对方法是，反其道而行。当发现句意很难看懂，结构很难分析时，直接看 E 选项，在这类题目中 E 选项是最有可能正确的答案。如果 E 不对，我们的看题顺序是 A，短（长度最短的选项）。在 E 选项中，主句主语是 we，动词是 will，从句由 if 引导，主语是 survey results，动词是 confirm。结构正确，句意清晰，因此选 E。

10. **选项**：B

考点：run-on 句型

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 Mark Spitz，动词是 was，逗号后又一个句子，主语是 he，动词是 won。可知，句子是一个 run-on 句型。因此，A 选项排除，B 选项，将后半句的动词改成 winning，是一个非谓语，同时逻辑主语正确，B 正确。C 选项，语义有误。D 选项，加了分号连接句子，加了 therefore 表示语义，结构正确，但是意思有误。E 选项，是一个被动，根据简洁性原则，主动大于被动，所以也不能选。

11. **选项**：C

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据逻辑主语的结构总结，本题是“名词，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语”的结构，要求名词与主语同类。根据这一思路，未画线的名词是 pioneer，因此主语也得是人，因此，A，B，D，E 选项全部排除。剩 C 选项。

12. **选项**：E

考点：综合考点

解析：分析句型结构，主语是 Acoma Pueblo，动词是 is，逗号后一个名词性结构，属于同位语。由此，A 选项错误，因为，逗号后的名词 population 与前句不同类。B 选项，and 前后不平行。C 选项，run-on 句型。D 选项，whose 指代不清。E 选项，加了连接词 and，前后句子结构平行。因此选 E。

13. **选项**：A

考点：连接词

解析：连接词在 2012 年的考点中考查得更为深入。不光会考查以往的语义错，在结构部分，更要求学生灵活分析句子的能力。after 在英语中既可以当连接词，又可以当介词。分析句型结构，本题中，after 后接一个名词 college，形成一个介宾短语，after 在这里是介词。主语是 Susan King，动词是 founded，连接词 but 连接另一个并列句，主语与前句一致，所以省略了，动词是 reduced。前后句子结构正确，且平行，因此 A 正确。B 选项，reducing 不是动词，前后结构不一致。C 选项与 B 选项同理。D 选项，run-on 句型，没有连接词连接。E 选项与 D 选项同理。所以答案是 A。

14. **选项**：A

考点：虚拟语气

解析：虚拟语气自 2011 年起，成为 SAT 语法当中的常考固定考点。而虚拟语气，最喜欢考的就是 if 条件状语从句的倒装。根据题目，未画线部分的结构是，might do，由此

分析，主句部分应该是对现在，或者对将来的虚拟。根据选项，A 选项，were they to be told 是对将来的虚拟倒装，结构正确。B 选项，是一个错误结构，同时也是常见的干扰项——将主句和从句的结构进行了混搭。考生需要牢记，if 是从句的标志词，would/could/might 是主句的标志词，两者不可以混搭。C 选项，being 自杀。D，E 选项不是虚拟语气。因此选 A。

2012 年 10 月语法真题解析

Section 6

25 minutes 35 questions

1. William Dalrymple's book is not only a gripping tale of politics and power and also evidence of the complexity of cross-cultural relationships.

A. and also
B. but also
C. as well as
D. in addition
E. and

2. Walking out of the theater, it was agreed by my sister and me that the movie was vastly overrated.

A. it was agreed by my sister and me
B. it was agreed by my sister and I
C. my sister and me, we agreed
D. my sister and me agreed
E. my sister and I agreed

3. When packing for a trip, you should follow the advice offered in many magazine articles: choose wrinkle-free clothing in black and in neutral colors.

A. you should follow the advice offered in many magazine articles
B. you would follow the advice offered from many magazine articles
C. follow the advice with many magazine articles
D. the advice in many magazine articles is offered and one should follow it
E. many magazine articles would offer advice to be followed

4. Home fuel cells, already available in Japan, which is a compact, pollution-free device that produce electricity at a fraction of the regular cost.

A. which is a compact, pollution-free device
B. a compact, pollution-free device
C. these devices are compact, pollution-free,
D. is a compact, pollution-free device
E. are compact, pollution-free devices

5. Because writers in colonial America had to pay their own printing costs, authorship was largely a profession with those who were relatively wealthy.

A. authorship was largely a profession with those who were
B. authorship was largely a profession of the
C. authorship, largely a profession of the
D. authorship having largely been a profession for those who were
E. therefore authorship was largely a profession for the

6. The program is one of many projects included in the ambitious Copenhagen Climate

Plan, it aims to make the Danish capital carbon neutral by 2025.

A. it aims
B. its aim is
C. where they aim
D. which aims
E. which is aimed

7. In a Zen rock garden, stones are positioned to represent islands, and the surrounding gravel is raked to form patterns that suggests ocean waves.

A. patterns that suggests
B. patterns suggesting
C. patterns, they suggest
D. patterns; which suggest
E. patterns; this suggesting

8. Until relatively recently humans were thought to be uniquely self-aware, scientists now know that most chimpanzees and orangutans can recognize their own reflections.

A. scientists now know
B. but scientists now know
C. but scientists who now know
D. however, scientists now know
E. but with scientists now knowing

9. Evidence of the prehistoric hunter-gatherers who once occupied the Grand Canyon includes animal figurines made out of split and woven twigs as well as rock-art panels and stone tools.

A. who once occupied the Grand Canyon includes
B. that once occupied the Grand Canyon include
C. when they occupied the Grand Canyon include
D. once occupying the Grand Canyon including
E. who at one time occupied the Grand Canyon, including

10. After scheduling it for demolition, the hundred-year-old building was instead moved to a new location.

A. After scheduling it for demolition, the hundred-year-old building was instead moved
B. After scheduling the hundred-year-old building for demolition, it was instead moved
C. After being scheduled for demolition, they instead moved the hundred-year-old building
D. Having been scheduled for demolition, they instead moved the hundred-year-old building
E. Having been scheduled for demolition, the hundred-year-old-building was instead moved

11. Because Earth's gravity is greater than the Moon's the energy expended in traveling from Earth to the Moon is greater than the opposite direction.

A. the opposite
B. traveling in the opposite
C. if one travels in the opposite
D. that of traveling in the opposite
E. that expended in traveling in the opposite

12. A passion fruit, (A) which is (B) about the size of an egg, (C) has a brittle outer shell (D) that became slightly wrinkled when the fruit is ripe. (E) No error

13. (A) Across the street from the new bookstore and coffee shop (B) were an old, dilapidated playground (C) whose broken equipment and overgrown weeds attested to

(D) long neglect. (E) No error

14. Because perspiration (A) does not evaporate (B) efficient at high humidity, humid air often (C) feels warmer to (D) us than would dry air at the same temperature. (E) No error

15. Hull House was (A) founded by Jane Addams as a community project (B) in which people of the neighborhood joined trained social workers (C) to provide day care, schooling, meals, and (D) they offer many other services. (E) No error

16. Although Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit was far from (A) being the (B) only eighteenth-century scientist (C) to propose a temperature scale, (D) but his was one of the few that were widely used. (E) No error

17. Often (A) used interchangeable in recipes, the nectarine and the peach (B) share many characteristics, but the skin of a nectarine (C) is smoother than (D) that of a peach. (E) No error

18. Speed-reading was once (A) promoted mainly to people who (B) were eager to catch up on recreational reading, but now the method (C) appeals to busy executives (D) coping about information overload. (E) No error

19. Like former British prime minister Margaret Thatcher, (A) who studied chemistry in college, German chancellor Angela Merkel (B) was initially (C) drawn to the sciences, (D) earning a doctorate in physics before entering politics. (E) No error

20. When the first department stores opened in the late nineteenth century, (A) they were cavernous, no-frills storerooms that (B) stock a hodgepodge of items (C) previously available (D) only from specialty merchants. (E) No error

21. Although the author (A) has presented her book to the publisher (B) as a fact-based memoir, she later confessed that it had been (C) entirely (D) fabricated. (E) No error

22. Because oysters eat (A) by filtering nutrients through their gills, their health is (B) affected by the quality of the water (C) passing through (D) it. (E) No error

23. (A) All morning long my friend and I (B) waited patiently in the courtroom (C) to hear whether we would be selected (D) as a juror in the upcoming trial. (E) No error

24. Researchers (A) recognize that the cuttlefish has an (B) extraordinary ability to camouflage itself, (C) but they have only a rough understanding (D) of how it does so. (E) No error

25. The plunging cost of genome-sequencing technologies (A) are expected to give people (B) unprecedented opportunities (C) to examine (D) their own genetic profiles. (E) No error

26. It was not until 1982, the year two major supermarket chains (A) began replacing paper bags (B) with plastic ones, (C) when the use of plastic shopping bags (D) became widespread. (E) No error

27. (A) Because the high-altitude regions where (B) it lives (C) have cold temperatures, dry soil, and (D) growing seasons are short, the bristlecone pine grows very slowly. (E) No error

28. Country-and-western musicians, (A) who in the past were thought (B) to

lack market consciousness, (C) are now seen (D) as one of the most commercially savvy performers in show business. (E) No error

29. New Jersey's Atlantic City still uses wooden planks for (A) their boardwalk, (B) even though other towns (C) have begun using plastic planks, which last (D) far longer. (E) No error

Questions 30 ~ 35 refer to the following passage.

(1) In 1902 an engineer named Willis Carrier designed an air-cooling system for a Brooklyn printing company. (2) Little did Carrier suspect that his "Apparatus for Treating Air," the first modern air conditioner, had changed the way people in the United States worked and lived.

(3) At first, they used such devices exclusively in private industry. (4) Their ability to cool indoor environments improved worker productivity and protected products as various as chocolate, film, and leather from heat damage. (5) Likewise, starting in the 1920s, air-conditioning increasingly appeared in public settings—most dramatically in the modern movie house, which it transformed. (6) Before air-conditioning, theater owners typically lost money in the summer, when the heat and poor ventilation made theaters unappealing. (7) In 1925 Carrier persuaded Adolph Zukor of Paramount Pictures to install air-conditioning in the Rivoli Theater in Manhattan. (8) The experiment was an enormous success. (9) Crowds flocked to the Rivoli. (10) Over the next five years, more than 300 movie theatre in the United States would follow the Rivoli's example.

(11) Movie theaters were just the beginning. (12) The introduction of air-conditioning into public areas, such as stores and restaurants, not only made those areas more comfortable but also created a demand for the same level of comfort in the home. (13) As the cost of the new technology came down, air-conditioned houses became a fixture of modern American life. (14) For example, porches became less common as the need to take advantage of breezes disappeared, a trend that prompted some social critics to voice concerns about the loss of contact with nature and neighbors. (15) Still, Zukor was right when he said of air-conditioning, "The people are going to like it."

30. Where in the passage would the following sentence best be placed?

Air-conditioning even altered the way those houses were designed.

A. Immediately before sentence (3)
B. Immediately before sentence (6)
C. Immediately before sentence (9)
D. Immediately before sentence (12)
E. Immediately before sentence (14)

31. In context, which of the revisions to sentence (2) (reproduced below) is most needed?

Little did Carrier suspect that his "Apparatus for Treating Air," the first modern air conditioner, had changed the way people in the United States worked and lived.

A. Change "Little did Carrier suspect" to "Carrier did not suspect".
B. Change "his" to "this".
C. Insert "which was" before "the first modern air conditioner".
D. Change "had changed" to "would cha-

nge".

E. Change "people" to "individuals".

32. In context, which is the best way to revise and combine the underlined portion of sentences (3) and (4) (produced below)?

At first, they used such devices exclusively in private industry. Their ability to cool indoor environments improved worker productivity and protected products as various as chocolate, film, and leather from heat damage.

A. They used such devices exclusively in private industry, and their

B. They used Carrier's device exclusively in private industry, as its

C. These devices were used exclusively in private industry because their

D. When these devices were used exclusively in private industry, their

E. Carrier's device was used exclusively in private industry, where its

33. In context, which of the following expressions would best be inserted at the beginning of sentence (7) (reproduced below)?

In 1925 Carrier persuaded Adolph Zukor of Paramount Pictures to install air-conditioning in the Rivoli Theater in Manhattan.

A. Nevertheless,

B. Similarity,

C. More importantly,

D. Rejecting this argument,

E. Responding to this problem,

34. In context, which revision of the underlined portion of sentence (9) (reproduced below) adds information that is most relevant?

Crowds flocked to the Rivoli.

A. Rivoli, eager to be present at the theater's widely advertised reopening

B. Rivoli, which was named after a famous street in Paris

C. Rivoli, as much to escape the heat as to see the movies

D. Rivoli, which was a Greek Revival building designed by Thomas W. Lamb

E. Rivoli, which previously had not had air-conditioning

35. Which sentence is best placed after sentence (15) to conclude the passage?

A. The price of air-conditioning units, however, has held steady, even though they are now globally produced.

B. Of course, the popularity of something is no guarantee that its creator will benefit financially from it.

C. Nowadays, air-conditioning is so common in the United States that most people don't give it a second thought—expect when it's not working.

D. Zukor himself progressed from exhibiting movies to producing them, eventually becoming the head of the Paramount Pictures Corporation.

E. On the contrary, air-conditioning is sure to be supplanted by more efficient cooling systems that have less of an impact on the environment.

长画线 Questions 1-11

1. **选项：** B

考点： 固定搭配

解析： not only... but also...，因此直接选 B。

2. **选项**：E

考点：逻辑主语

解析：这是一道简单的考逻辑主语的题目，根据本书考点篇对逻辑主语的讲解，我们知道，看到“doing，主语（S）+谓语（V）+宾语（O）”的结构，就要考虑主语（S）与 doing 的主语是否一致，逻辑是否通畅。分析句型可知，主语是 it，因为 it 指代“谁都无法得知”，所以无法直接 walking。由此，A，B 排除。C 选项，多主语，错误。D 选项，me 的格不对，在主语的位置用主格。E 选项，句子的主语是 my sister and I，可以做 walking 的逻辑主语。

3. **选项**：A

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据本书考点篇对逻辑主语的讲解，“When doing，主语（S）+谓语（V）+宾语（O）”的结构，doing 的动作发出者是主语（S）才符合语法逻辑。因此，可以 pack 的主语有 A，B 选项。C 选项没有主语，直接用动词 follow，错。D，E 主语不能发出 pack 的动作，错误。因此，可能的选项只有 A，B。B 选项搭配错误，因此选 A。

4. **选项**：E

考点：Run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：这道题目，第一眼看去不像逻辑主语。这类题目没有很明显的题型提示。因此，需要用“抓结构+对考点”的基本方法来解题。句子的主语是 home fuel cells，接下来找到两个动词，分别是 is 和 produce，但是分别有连接词 which，that。由此分析出此句缺少主句的谓语动词。是不完整句的考点。根据这个思路，排除 A，B，C。剩 D，E。主语部分是 cells，主谓一致，故选 E。

5. **选项**：B

考点：固定搭配

解析：首先通过自杀词 having，将选项 D 排除。分析句子结构，可知，一个句点的范围里，有两个动词，had 和 was，由 because 连接。由此可知，C 选项排除。E 选项 therefore 的意思和 because 重复，E 排除。最后对比 A，B 选项，A 选项 with 的介词搭配不好，所以选 B。

6. **选项**：D

考点：Run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，句中含有两个动词，is 和 aims，没有连接词。是 run-on 句型。因此，没有添加连接词的 A，B 排除。C 选项有代词，根据代词在长画线中的做题规律，有代词的选项放到最后才选，因此将 C 选项排后。分析 D，E 选项，E 选项使用被动意思有误，因此只能选 D，which 是指 Copenhagen Climate Plan，aims 符合主谓一致和上下文给出的时态。

7. **选项**：B

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句子结构，句中有三个动词，are，is 和 suggests；两个连接词，and 和 that。主语分别是 stones，gravel 和关系代词 that 指代的 patterns。由此可知，画线部分 sug-

gests 的主谓一致有误。因此 A 错。B 选项将动词改为现在分词做后置定语，同时去掉一个连接词，句法结构正确，B 正确。C 选项，去掉了有连接作用的关系代词，改成 they，句子是 run-on 句型，错。D 选项，将原句的逗号改成有连接作用的分号，同时将有连接作用的关系代词 that 更换成 which，句子的连接词多余，句法结构错。E 选项，将原题的逗号改成分号，而分号之后没有接句子，错。因此只能选 B。

8. **选项：**B

考点：Run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，这句话中找到三个动词，分别是 were，know 和 can recognize，句中只有一个连接词 that。因此是动词多余的 run-on 句型。注意，until 在这里不是连接词，因为 until 后面接的是 relatively recently。根据这一思路，可以排除的选项有，A，D。C 选项虽然加了连接词 but，但后面不是句子，不平行，所以错。E 选项也不符合 but 的平行结构，错。因此只能选 B。B 选项加了连接词 but，同时保证了 but 前后结构平行。

9. **选项：**A

考点：动词单复数

解析：分析句型结构，句中有两个动词，分别是 occupied 和 includes，由关系代词 who 连接。occupied 的主语是 who 指代的 the prehistoric hunter-gatherers，是一个定语从句。includes 的主语是 evidence。由此可见，A 是正确的。B 选项，include 的单复数有误。C 选项，有代词放最后，同时 when 不符合上下文语义，include 动词单复数有误。D 选项，全句没有谓语动词。E 选项，由于将 include 改成 including，主句缺少谓语动词。这道题目明显是考句子结构的题目，分析时需要注意的地方是，能够识别出 made out of 不是谓语，是一个过去分词。我们在本书考点篇讲过，在“主语（S）+谓语（V）+宾语（O）”的句型结构中，v-ed 后面加名词就是过去时，在句中是谓语。v-ed 后面加介词是过去分词，在句中不是谓语。

10. **选项：**E

考点：逻辑主语

解析：这是一道明显的逻辑主语题。根据本书考点篇给大家详细讲解的逻辑主语的考点，在“after doing，主语（S）+谓语（V）+宾语（O）”的结构中，两者的主语要一致。因此，A 选项，scheduling 在句中的主语是 the hundred-year-old building，不符合逻辑，错。B 选项，scheduling 的主语是 it，不符合逻辑，错。C 选项，being 自杀。从 D 选项开始，改成“doing，主语（S）+谓语（V）+宾语（O）”的情况。同理，doing 的主语应该就是从句的主语（S）。D 选项，主语是代词 they，有代词的选项放最后。E 选项，主语是 the hundred-year-old-building，可以做 having been scheduled 的逻辑主语，因此选 E。这道题需要注意，Having 在这里首字母大写放句首，属于不自杀的情况。

11. **选项：**E

考点：比较结构

解析：分析句型结构，句中有两个动词，分别是 is 和 is，由 because 连接。主句部分是比较结构，than 是标志词。本题比较的是主语成分，因此前后的比较中心要一致。than 之前比较的是 energy，而 expended in... the Moon 是 energy 的后置定语，因此 than 之后也

应该是 energy 或者指代它的代词。因此，可能的选项只有 D，E。接下来，比较结构也属于平行结构，前后的结构要平行一致，E 选项，that 代 energy，that 之后的 expended in... 与 than 之前的结构平行一致，因此只能选 E。

比较结构的题目更要注意使用抓结构的方法做题。在本书的考点篇为大家总结过，当发现比较结构中在比较主语、宾语和表语的主干成分时，比较中心要一致。当发现在比较前后的状语时，介词不可省。切忌翻译成中文后，根据感觉进行代换的做题方法。如果这样做题，往往会被自己不正确的理解带到做题的误区中。

短画线 Questions 12 ~ 29

12. **选项：**D

考点：动词时态

解析：分析结构，主语是 fruit，主句的谓语动词是 has，单复数对应一致，推出 C 选项正确。继续分析，两个逗号隔开的非限制性定语从句，which is，关系代词指物用 which，正确，is 与主语单复数一致，因此 A 选项正确。B 选项，说法无误，B 选项正确。that became，that 代 outer shell 无误，而 became 的时态由下文 when the fruit is ripe 指示时态有误。在本书的考点篇时态的常见考法中为大家专门总结过在 SAT 中常常可以用到的技巧，即 when，while 前后时态一致。

13. **选项：**B

考点：动词主谓一致之倒装

解析：倒装是考主谓一致时最难的一种考法，对分析句型结构的要求很高。在阅读这道题目时，我们很容易找到句中的第一个动词 were，一般而言，动词之前是主语，因此，在 were 之前应该有一个主语。题目中 were 之前是 across the street from the new bookstore and coffee shop。不注意分析结构的考生，此时很容易掉到陷阱里，认为 the new bookstore and coffee shop 是两者，因此用 were 做动词没有问题，而完全忽视了，做主语的只能是名词、代词性质的。在 the new bookstore and coffee shop 前有介词 from，再往前仍然是介宾短语 across the street。介词和它后面的名词是统一不可拆分的整体，是介词性质，不能做主语。因此，在这句话中，were 前是没有主语的。在本书考点篇中，为大家总结过，当发现动词前找不到名词或名词性结构的时候，这句话一定倒装，主谓一致要到动词之后去找。在 were 之后，我们看到 an old，dilapidated playground，这是一个单数，因此与 were 单复数不一致，所以选 B。

在这道题中，有些同学会误选 C，whose，认为 playground 是物不是人，不能用 whose。其实，这是大家对 whose 的误判。whose 在定语从句中是可以用于指物和指人的。

14. **选项：**B

考点：形容词副词之修饰关系错

解析：分析句型，连接词 because 连接两个句子，从句中主语是 perspiration，动词是 does not evaporate，动词之后的修饰语是 efficient。efficient 是一个形容词，不能修饰动词，要改成 efficiently 才对。因此选 B。

15. **选项：**D

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型，Hull House 做主语，动词是 was，关系词 in which 连接定语从句，从句中主语是 people，动词是 joined，动词后连接由不定式构成的状语，to provide day care，schooling，meals and. . . ，在这里我们看到了一个平行结构的信号词 and。and 之前是名词，名词，名词的并列，因此 and 之后也应该是名词，而不应该是句子。所以 D 错。

16. **选项**：D

考点：连接词

解析：although 和 but 不可以同时连用。这就和 because 不能与 so 同时连用一个道理。所以这道题选 D。需要注意的是，很多学生会误选 A，认为 being 是自杀词。需要注意的是，being 只有在长画线中才有自杀词之说，短画线不在此列。

17. **选项**：A

考点：形容词副词

解析：分析句型，状语部分，used interchangeable 中 interchangeable 是形容词，不能修饰 used，因此是形容词修饰关系错，改成 interchangeably。

18. **选项**：D

考点：固定搭配

解析：cope with，不是 cope about。

19. **选项**：E

20. **选项**：B

考点：动词时态

解析：分析句型，when 连接两个句子，从句中主语是 department stores，动词是 opened，主句中主语是 they，动词是 were。继续分析，看到动词 stock 以及关系代词 that。由此可知，句子的结构没有问题，但是，全句的动词都是过去时态，只有画线部分是现在时态，所以 B 选项时态有误。

21. **选项**：A

考点：动词时态

解析：分析句型，although 连接两个句子，从句的主语是 the author，动词是 has presented，主句的主语是 she，动词是 confessed。句子结构无误。此时，我们看到题目中的动词都是过去相应的时态，confessed，had been，同时句中还有表示时间先后的时间状语 later，因此，选项 A，has presented 时态有误。

22. **选项**：D

考点：代词单复数

解析：分析句型，because 连接两个句子，从句的主语是 oysters，动词是 eat，主句的主语是 their health，动词是 is，结构没有问题。而选项 D，代词 it 单复数有误，根据上文，oysters 和代词 their health 中的 their 都指示代词应该是复数。

23. **选项**：D

考点：名词单复数

解析：根据上下文，主语是 my friend and I，因此 D 选项 as a juror 的名词单复数有误，两个人，不能是一个 juror。

24. **选项**：E

25. **选项**：A

考点：动词单复数

解析：句中主语是 the plunging cost，动词是 are，很容易看出，句中的动词单复数有误。应该使用 is，所以 A 选项错。

26. **选项**：C

考点：固定搭配

解析：这是在历届真题中反复考到的一个强调句固定搭配的问题。要在分清句型结构的前提下，看出强调句，it be not until... that...。如果去掉中间的干扰成分，这句话应该说成，“it was not until 1982 when the use of plastic shopping bags became widespread.”强调句式有误，将 when 改成 that。至于两个逗号隔开的 the year... plastic ones 部分，是由 the year 做引导词的时间状语从句。

27. **选项**：D

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型，because 做连接词，连接两句话。从句的主语是 the high-altitude regions，动词是 have，主谓一致。主句的主语是 pine，动词是 grows，主谓一致。由上下文也可知 C 选项的时态无误。在状语从句中，还有一个由 where 引导的定语从句，主语是 it，动词是 lives。根据下文，it 代 pine，因此单复数正确。全句都是现在时态，所以 lives 时态正确。所以 B 选项无误。继续看到状语从句的宾语中有一个平行结构的信号词 and，and 之前是名词，名词的结构，and 后也得是名词，而不能是句子。因此 D 选项错，不平行。

28. **选项**：D

考点：代词单复数

解析：分析句型，主语是 musicians 动词是 are，其中包含一个由关系代词 who 引导的定语从句，主语是 who，动词是 were thought。句型结构正确。上下文均是复数名词，因此，选项 D 中的 one 单复数有误。

29. **选项**：A

考点：代词单复数

解析：分析句型，主语是 Atlantic City，动词是 uses，连接词是 even though，从句的主语是 towns，动词是 have begun using，定语从句关系代词是 which，动词是 last。句子结构无误。而选项 A，代词单复数有误，their 指代 Atlantic City，是单数，因此选 A。

改进文章 Questions 30 ~ 35 题

30. **选项**：E

考点：阅读题

解析：本句话说“空调甚至都改变的房屋的设计”，根据上下文，（14）句说，“之前用于通风的门廊的设计变得越来越少了”，放在（14）句前符合语义逻辑。

31. **选项**：D

考点：语法题

解析：不画线修改题，根据做题口诀“有错改错，没错删整句”。选项中没有删除整句的选项，因此要从句中找出可能的语法错误。分析句子结构发现，这里有一个 Little 的部分倒装。主句的动词是 did suspect，后接由 that 引导的宾语从句。从句的主语是 apparatus for treating air，动词是 had changed。句子的结构没有问题。但是，had changed 是过去完成时态，时态有误，需要改成过去将来。因此选 D。

32. **选项**：E

考点：语法题

解析：有代词的选项放到最后才选，因此，A，B 选项都有代词 they，放后。C，D 选项语义逻辑有误。E 选项句子结构和语义均正确。主句主语是 device，动词是 was used，后接一个由 where 引导的定语从句。

33. **选项**：E

考点：阅读题

解析：本题的问题是，在第（7）句前要放什么词。

第（7）句的意思是，“在 1925 年，Carrier 说服了 Paramount Pictures 的 Adolph Zukor 在位于曼哈顿的 Rivoli 剧院装空调”。回原文，看上文的意思。大意是“在使用空调前，一到夏天，剧院就因为炎热和通风效果不好的通风系统而闷热无比，毫无吸引力，所以多半都要赔钱。”因此，第（7）句前“为了应对这一问题”，也就是 E 选项，更为贴切。

34. **选项**：C

考点：阅读题

解析：“大批的人群涌入 Rivoli”，这句话后，应该加什么细节。根据上文提到“在剧院装空调”，因此下文也要与之相关。因此可能的选项有 C，E。对比两个选项，C 选项更优，因为既提到了“有空调提升了舒适度”，也提到了“剧院里看电影”。

35. **选项**：C

考点：阅读题

解析：篇章结束的句子应该是概括总结，不引出新的观点细节的句子。根据这个思路，A 选项排除，提出了 price 这个细节，而不能紧接上句。B 选项，全文没有提到 Carrier 的获利问题，所以排除。C 选项正确，延续上文，说空调的流行普遍性。D 选项，对 Zukor 的细节描述与原文无关，排除。E 选项，提出新的空调替代品问题，错误，上文没有提到。因此只能选 C。

Section 10

Time 10 minutes 14 questions

1. Lorena Ochoa has been recognized not only as a champion golfer <u>but also being</u> a humanitarian, having created a foundation to support young people in Mexico.

A. but also being

B. but also as

C. she also is

D. also that she is

E. and also as

2. Relations between the United States and China began to thaw in 1971, <u>when the Chinese table-tennis team invited</u> its American counterpart to play in series of exhibition mat-

ches.

A. when the Chinese table-tennis team invited

B. where the Chinese table-tennis team had invited

C. as the Chinese table-tennis team invites

D. that was when the Chinese table-tennis team invited

E. the Chinese table-tennis team invited

3. Crows and their relatives—which include ravens, magpies, and jays—are renowned for their intelligence and the capability to flourish in landscapes dominated by humans.

A. the capability

B. are capable

C. how they are able

D. their ability

E. to be able

4. Leaders of programs that promote gender equity frequently point to the role that parents and educators play in promoting young women's interest in science, technology, and math.

A. play in promoting

B. plays in promoting

C. is playing to promote

D. plays to promote

E. having played in promoting

5. Although all primates use vocal and facial expressions to communicate, only the great apes—chimpanzees, bonobos, orangutans, and gorillas—use gestures as well, they share this behavior with humans.

A. they share this behavior

B. this behavior is shared

C. sharing which behavior

D. a behavior shared by them

E. a behavior they share

6. When boarding a train, one should stand to the side and allow other travelers to disembark before you attempt to enter.

A. you attempt to enter

B. you attempted to enter

C. you enter

D. attempting to enter

E. one attempted entering

7. Medieval Icelandic sagas, which range from epic tales about legendary figures to factual accounts of Icelandic history.

A. sagas, which range

B. sagas, they range

C. sagas, ranging

D. sagas ranges

E. sagas range

8. Distinguished by its highly repetitive rhyme scheme, many poets have used the villanelle, a poetic form, including Dylan Thomas and Sylvia Plath.

A. many poets have used the villanelle, a poetic form, including Dylan Thomas and Sylvia Plath.

B. many poets, including Dylan Thomas and Sylvia Plath, have used the villanelle, a poetic form

C. the villanelle is a poetic form that has been used by many poets, including Dylan Thomas and Sylvia Plath

D. the villanelle, a poetic form that many poets, including Dylan Thomas and Sylvia Plath, have used

E. Dylan Thomas and Sylvia Plath were among the many poets who have used the villanelle, a poetic form

9. Maize, like millet and sorghum, is a

kind of grass, but being distinguished by its large seed heads and matures more quickly than they do.

A. but being distinguished by its large seed heads and matures more quickly than they do

B. but it is distinguished from them by its large seed heads and quicker maturation

C. but its large seed heads distinguish it from them and matures more quickly than they do

D. and is distinguished by having large seed heads and also because it matures more quickly than them

E. which is distinguished by its large seed heads and by a maturation that is quicker than they have

10. Before he was elected governor of New Mexico in 1918, Octaviano Larrazolo had helped to ensure that the constitution of this new state guaranteed equal rights for Hispanic Americans.

A. Larrazolo had helped

B. Larrazolo has helped

C. Larrazolo, helped

D. Larrazolo, he helped

E. Larrazolo, helping

11. The 1922 silent film *The Toll of the Sea* is notable both for being the first commercial movie shot entirely in Technicolor and Chinese American actor Anna May Wong was starring in it.

A. Chinese American actor Anna May Wong was starring in it

B. Chinese American actor Anna May Wong starred in the film as well

C. for starring Anna May Wong, a Chinese American actor

D. its star was Chinese American actor Anna May Wong

E. it starred Anna May Wong, a Chinese American actor

12. The inventor studied the tiny hooks on cockleburs that had stuck tightly to his clothing and then created a fabric fastener that operated similarly in much the same way.

A. clothing and then created a fabric fastener that operated similarly in much the same way

B. clothing and then created a fabric fastener that operated similarly

C. clothing, then creating a fabric fastener operating similarly in much the same way

D. clothing, then a fabric fastener that operated similarly was created by him

E. clothing, he then created a fabric fastener that operated similarly

13. In the United States, the legal systems of 49 of the states were modeled after English law, but Louisiana was based on the Napoleonic Code and Roman law.

A. but Louisiana

B. although Louisiana

C. that of Louisiana

D. whereas Louisiana's

E. however Louisiana's

14. Our tour guide requested that, while hiking through the national park, our garbage not be thrown on the trails.

A. our garbage not be thrown

B. out garbage should not be thrown

C. not to throw our garbage

D. we did not throw our garbage

E. we not throw our garbage

Section 10　Question 1 ~ 14

1. **选项**：B

考点：固定搭配加平行结构

解析：not only. . . but also. . . 是固定搭配，因此，只能从 A，B 中选择。而平行结构，前后结构要一致，前面是 as 的结构，后面也要是 as 的结构，因此只能选 B。

2. **选项**：A

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 relations，动词是 began，后接由 when 引导的定语从句，when 前面是时间 1971，when 后面是完整的句子，主语是 team，动词是 invited。句子结构正确且语义正确。选 A。B 选项，前面没有地点名词，不能用 where 引导。C 选项，as 语义不对。D 选项，that 单独使用，错误。E 选项 run-on 句型，错误。

3. **选项**：D

考点：固定搭配

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 crows and their relatives，动词是 are，句子结构正确。但是，句中固定搭配有误。capable 或者它的衍生词 capability 后边的介词应该是 of，所以 A，B 选项排除。C 选项，与 and 前名词结构不平行，排除。同理，排除 E 选项。答案是 D 选项，their intelligence 和 their ability 平行，同时 able 后的介词搭配是 to。

4. **选项**：A

考点：动词单复数

解析：主句主语是 leaders，动词是 point，后接 role 的定语从句，从句的主语是 parents and educators，谓语是 play，句子结构正确，且动词单复数与主语一致。由此，可以排除 B，C，D 选项。E 选项 having 自杀，排除。因此选 A 选项。

5. **选项**：E

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，although 作为连接词连接两个句子，从句的主语是 primates，动词是 use，主句主语是 apes，动词是 use，逗号后又接一个句子，主语是 they，动词是 share。经分析，是 run-on 句型，没有连接词，所以 A 选项，错误。同理，B 选项错误。C 选项，结构错误，有连接词 which 后面却没有句子。D 选项，E 选项，主动大于被动。所以选 E 选项。E 选项，a behavior 是 gesture 的同位语，后接省去了关系代词的定语从句。

6. **选项**：D

考点：代词

解析：代词的考点，one 和 you 不可以互相指代。主句的主语是 one，动词是 should stand，从句的主语是 you。因此 A 选项错误。同理，B，C 选项排除。剩 D，E。E 选项时态 attempted 有误。只能选 D。而 D 选项，逻辑主语正确。

7. **选项**：E

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，句子的主语是 sagas，却找不到句子的谓语动词。全句唯一的动词 range 被 which 吸入从句中，根据这一思路，将动词改出的选项是正确的。所以答案

只在 D 或 E 中。D 选项主谓不一致，因此答案是 E。

8. **选项**：C

考点：逻辑主语

解析：根据逻辑主语的常考结构，本句是“done，主语（S）+ 谓语（V）+ 宾语（O）”的结构。要求，主句的主语和 done 的逻辑主语一致。本题中，distinguished by its highly repetitive rhyme scheme，主语 + 谓语 + 宾语，主语不能是人，因此可能的选项只有 C 和 D。D 选项主谓不一致，答案是 C。

9. **选项**：B

考点：综合考点

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 maize，后接介宾结构做插入，主句动词是 is，but 后接另一个句子。首先通过自杀词，将 A 选项排除，being 自杀。将 D 选项排除，having 自杀。E 选项，and 前后结构不平行，排除。剩 B，C 选项。C 选项，动词 matures 单复数错误，与主语 seed heads 主谓不一致。因此选 B 选项。

10. **选项**：A

考点：run-on 句型及不完整句

解析：分析句型结构，before 作为连接词连接两个句子，从句的主语是 he，动词是 was elected，主句的主语是 Octaviano Larrazolo，动词是 had helped，句子结构正确。同时，全句都是过去相应的时态。因此 A 选项正确。B 选项是现在完成时态，时态有误。C 选项逗号使用有误。D 选项主语多余。E 选项主句没有谓语动词，是不完整句。

11. **选项**：C

考点：平行结构

解析：分析句型结构，该句是 both... and 的平行结构。both 的部分是 for doing，and 的部分也需要是 for doing。因此 C 选项就是正确答案。

12. **选项**：B

考点：语义重复

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 inventor，主句动词是 studied，宾语是 the tiny hooks on cockleburs。后接 that 引导的定语从句，及 and 引导的平行结构。句中发现，similarly 和 in much the same way 语义重复，所以 A 错。B 选项，and 连接连个平行并列句 studied 和 created，句子都是主谓宾后接定语从句，结构正确。C 选项，similarly 和 in much the same way 语义重复。D 选项，句子结构有误，同时引出代词 him，不正确。E 选项，run-on 句型，两句中没有连接词连接，错误。

13. **选项**：D

考点：连结词语义

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 the legal systems，动词是 were，but 做连接词连接另一个句子，主语是 Louisiana，动词是 was。根据上下文可知，画线部分不应该是 Louisiana 怎样，而应该是 Louisiana 的法律系统，因此主语错误。按照这一思路，A，B，C 排除。剩 D，E。E 选项，两个句子没有连接词，是 run-on 句型，错误。选 D。D 选项，whereas 是连接词，且语义逻辑正确。

14. **选项：**E

考点：逻辑主语及虚拟语气

解析：分析句型结构，主句主语是 tour guide，动词是 requested，宾语部分接由 that 引导的从句，从句主语是 our garbage，动词是 not be thrown。同时，从句中套一个逻辑主语的结构，while hiking. . . 。首先通过“while doing，主语（S）+谓语（V）+宾语（O）”的结构，考虑到 doing 和主句的主语（S）应该一致，故 A，B，C 排除，剩 D，E。通过 requested 名词性从句的虚拟可知，that 后的虚拟是 should + 动词原形，should 可以省略，因此 D 选项排除，E 是正确答案。

参 考 文 献

[1] 薄冰. 薄冰英语语法 [M]、北京：开明出版社，2008.
[2] 张满胜. 英语语法新思维 中级 [M]. 北京：群言出版社，2010.
[3] 张满胜. 英语语法新思维 高级 [M]. 北京：群言出版社，2010.
[4] 张道真. 英语实用语法 [M]. 北京：首都师范大学出版社，2011.